



EUROPEAN
TELECOMMUNICATION
STANDARD

ETS 300 175-3

October 1992

Source: ETSI TC-RES

Reference: DE/RES-3001-3

ICS: 33.060, 33.060.20

Key words: DECT

**Radio Equipment and Systems (RES);
Digital European Cordless Telecommunications
Common interface**

ETSI

European Telecommunications Standards Institute

ETSI Secretariat

Postal address: F-06921 Sophia Antipolis CEDEX - FRANCE

Office address: 650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis - Valbonne - FRANCE

X.400: c=fr, a=atlas, p=etsi, s=secretariat - **Internet:** secretariat@etsi.fr

Tel.: +33 92 94 42 00 - Fax: +33 93 65 47 16

Copyright Notification: No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission. The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© European Telecommunications Standards Institute 1992. All rights reserved.

Contents

Foreword		13
1	Scope	15
2	Normative references	15
3	Definitions and abbreviations	17
3.1	Definitions.....	17
3.2	Abbreviations.....	20
4	Description of the medium access layer	22
4.1	MAC layer reference model	22
4.1.1	General	22
4.1.2	Cluster Control Function (CCF).....	23
4.1.3	Cell Site Functions (CSF).....	23
4.1.4	Relationship to physical layer elements	23
4.2	Frame and multiframe structures	24
4.2.1	General	24
4.2.2	Frame structure	24
4.2.3	Multiframe structure.....	25
4.3	State definitions	26
4.3.1	PP states	26
4.3.2	RFP states	27
5	Overview of medium access layer services	28
5.1	General.....	28
5.1.1	Broadcast message control.....	28
5.1.2	Connectionless message control.....	28
5.1.3	Multi-bearer control	28
5.2	Service descriptions	28
5.2.1	Common functions.....	28
5.2.2	BMC service	29
5.2.3	CMC service.....	29
5.2.4	MBC services	29
5.3	Logical channels.....	30
5.3.1	MBC connection endpoints (MC-SAP logical channels).....	30
5.3.1.1	The higher layer C-plane channels, C	30
5.3.1.2	The higher layer U-Plane channels, I	30
5.3.1.3	The higher layer U-Plane control channel, G _F	31
5.3.2	CMC endpoints (MB-SAP logical channels)	31
5.3.2.1	The connectionless C-Plane channels, C _L	31
5.3.2.2	The connectionless U-Plane channel, S _{I_N}	31
5.3.3	BMC endpoint (MA-SAP logical channel).....	31
5.3.3.1	The slow broadcast channel, B _S	31
5.3.4	Internal MAC control channels.....	31
5.3.4.1	The system information channel, Q	31
5.3.4.2	Identities channel, N.....	32
5.3.4.3	The MAC control channel, M.....	32
5.3.4.4	MAC paging channel, P	32
5.4	SAP definitions.....	32
5.4.1	MA SAP	33
5.4.2	MB SAP	33
5.4.3	MC SAP	33

5.4.4	ME SAP	34
5.4.5	Order of transmission	34
5.5	Bearers	34
5.5.1	Bearer types	34
5.5.2	Bearer operation	35
5.6	Connection oriented services	35
5.6.1	Connection types	35
5.6.1.1	Basic connections	35
5.6.1.2	Advanced connections	36
5.6.1.3	Connection identifiers	36
5.6.2	Symmetric and asymmetric connections	36
5.6.2.1	Symmetric connections	37
5.6.2.2	Asymmetric connections	38
5.7	Broadcast and connectionless services	39
5.7.1	The broadcast services	40
5.7.1.1	The continuous broadcast service	40
5.7.1.2	The non-continuous broadcast service	41
5.7.2	The connectionless services	41
5.7.2.1	Connectionless downlink services	41
5.7.2.2	Connectionless uplink services	41
6	Multiplexing	43
6.1	CCF multiplexing functions	43
6.2	CSF multiplexing functions	43
6.2.1	Bit MAPpings (MAP)	47
6.2.1.1	D-field MAPping (D-MAP)	48
6.2.1.2	A-field MAPping (A-MAP)	49
6.2.1.3	B-field MAPping (B-MAP)	49
6.2.2	Time multiplexers	51
6.2.2.1	Tail MUltipleXer (T-MUX)	52
6.2.2.1.1	T-MUX algorithm for RFP transmissions	52
6.2.2.1.2	T-MUX algorithm for PT transmissions	54
6.2.2.2	B-field control multiplexer (E/U-MUX)	54
6.2.2.3	B-field mode multiplexer (C-MUX)	55
6.2.2.3.1	Double slot and full slot modes	55
6.2.2.3.2	Half slot modes	58
6.2.3	Encryption	58
6.2.4	Scrambling	59
6.2.5	Error control	60
6.2.5.1	R-CRC overview	60
6.2.5.2	R-CRC generation and checking	61
6.2.5.3	X-CRC overview	61
6.2.5.4	X-CRC generation and checking	61
6.2.6	Broadcast controller	62
7	Medium access layer messages	63
7.1	Header field	63
7.1.1	Overview/formatting	63
7.1.2	Tail identification, TA, bits a_0 to a_2	64
7.1.3	The "Q1 / BCK" bit, bit a_3	64
7.1.4	B-field identification, BA, bits a_4 to a_6	65
7.1.5	The "Q2" bit, bit a_7	65
7.2	Messages in the tail field	65
7.2.1	Overview	65
7.2.2	Identities information (N_T)	66
7.2.3	System information and multiframe marker (Q_T)	66
7.2.3.1	General	66
7.2.3.2	Static system information	67

	7.2.3.2.1	General, $Q_H = 0, 1$ (hex)	67
	7.2.3.2.2	Q_H and Normal-Reverse (NR)	67
	7.2.3.2.3	Slot Number (SN)	68
	7.2.3.2.4	Start Position (SP)	68
	7.2.3.2.5	ESCAPE bit (ESC)	68
	7.2.3.2.6	Number of transceivers	69
	7.2.3.2.7	Extended RF carrier information available	69
	7.2.3.2.8	RF carriers available (RF-cars)	69
	7.2.3.2.9	SPaRe bits (SPR)	69
	7.2.3.2.10	Carrier number	70
	7.2.3.2.11	SPaRe bits (SPR)	70
	7.2.3.2.12	Primary receiver Scan Carrier Number (PSCN)	70
	7.2.3.3	Extended RF carrier information	71
	7.2.3.3.1	General, $Q_H = 2$ (hex)	71
	7.2.3.3.2	Extended RF carriers	71
	7.2.3.4	Fixed part capabilities	71
	7.2.3.4.1	General, $Q_H = 3$ (hex)	71
	7.2.3.4.2	Standard capabilities	71
	7.2.3.5	Extended fixed part capabilities	72
	7.2.3.5.1	General, $Q_H = 4$ (hex)	72
	7.2.3.5.2	Extended capabilities	73
	7.2.3.6	Secondary access rights identities	73
	7.2.3.6.1	General, $Q_H = 5$ (hex)	73
	7.2.3.6.2	SARI message	73
	7.2.3.7	Multiframe number	73
	7.2.3.7.1	General, $Q_H = 6$ (hex)	73
	7.2.3.7.2	Multiframe number	73
	7.2.3.8	Escape	74
	7.2.3.8.1	General, $Q_H = 7$ (hex)	74
	7.2.3.8.2	Escape information	74
7.2.4	Paging Tail (P_T)		74
	7.2.4.1	General format	74
	7.2.4.1.1	P_T format for full and long page messages	74
	7.2.4.1.2	P_T format for short page messages ...	74
	7.2.4.1.3	P_T format for zero length page messages	74
	7.2.4.2	P_T header format	75
	7.2.4.2.1	General format	75
	7.2.4.2.2	Bit ag is the extend flag	75
	7.2.4.2.3	B_S SDU length indication	75
	7.2.4.3	MAC layer information for P_T	75
	7.2.4.3.1	Information type	75
	7.2.4.3.2	Fill bits	76
	7.2.4.3.3	Blind full slot information	76
	7.2.4.3.4	Bearer description	76
	7.2.4.3.5	RFP identity	77
	7.2.4.3.6	Escape	77
	7.2.4.3.7	Dummy or connectionless downlink bearer marker	77
	7.2.4.3.8	Bearer handover information	77
	7.2.4.3.9	RFP status	78
7.2.5	MAC control (M_T)		79
	7.2.5.1	General format and contents	79
	7.2.5.2	Basic connection control	80

	7.2.5.2.1	General	80
	7.2.5.2.2	Format for most messages	80
	7.2.5.2.3	WAIT	81
7.2.5.3		Advanced connection control	81
	7.2.5.3.1	General	81
	7.2.5.3.2	ACCESS_REQUEST	81
	7.2.5.3.3	BEARER_HANDOVER_REQUEST	82
	7.2.5.3.4	..CONNECTION_HANDOVER_REQUEST	82
	7.2.5.3.5UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST	82
	7.2.5.3.6	BEARER_CONFIRM	82
	7.2.5.3.7	WAIT	82
	7.2.5.3.8	ATTRIBUTES_T	83
	7.2.5.3.9	BANDWIDTH_T	84
	7.2.5.3.10	CHANNEL_LIST	84
	7.2.5.3.11	UNCONFIRMED_DUMMY	85
	7.2.5.3.12	UNCONFIRMED_HANDOVER	86
	7.2.5.3.13	RELEASE	86
7.2.5.4		MAC layer test messages	87
	7.2.5.4.1	Basic format	87
	7.2.5.4.2	FORCE_TRANSMIT	87
	7.2.5.4.3	LOOPBACK_DATA	88
	7.2.5.4.4	DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY	89
	7.2.5.4.5	FORCE_BEARER_HANDOVER (portable part only)	90
	7.2.5.4.6	ESCAPE	90
	7.2.5.4.7	NETWORK_TEST	90
	7.2.5.4.8	CLEAR_TEST_MODES	91
7.2.5.5		Quality control	91
7.2.5.6		Broadcast and connectionless services	93
7.2.5.7		Encryption control	94
7.2.5.8		B-field setup, first PT transmission	94
7.2.5.9		Escape	94
7.2.5.10		TARI message	94
7.3		Messages in the B-field	95
7.3.1		Overview	95
7.3.2		Slot type encoding	96
7.3.3		Advanced connection control	96
	7.3.3.1	General format	96
	7.3.3.2	BEARER_REQUEST	97
	7.3.3.3	BEARER_CONFIRM	98
	7.3.3.4	WAIT	98
	7.3.3.5	ATTRIBUTES_B	98
	7.3.3.6	BANDWIDTH_B	98
	7.3.3.7	CHANNEL_LIST	99
	7.3.3.8	UNCONFIRMED_DUMMY	99
	7.3.3.9	UNCONFIRMED_HANDOVER	99
	7.3.3.10	RELEASE	99
7.3.4		Null	100
7.3.5		Quality control	101
	7.3.5.1	General format	101
	7.3.5.2	Bearer and connection control	101
	7.3.5.3	RESET	103
	7.3.5.4	Bearer quality in an asymmetric connection	103
7.3.6		Extended system information	104
	7.3.6.1	General format	104
	7.3.6.2	TARI messages	104
7.3.7		G _F -channel data packet	104
7.3.8		Escape	105

8	Medium access layer primitives	106
8.1	Connection oriented service primitives.....	106
8.1.1	Connection setup: MAC-CON.....	107
8.1.2	Connection modification: MAC-MOD.....	108
8.1.3	CO data transmit ready: MAC-CO_DTR.....	109
8.1.4	CO data transfer: MAC-CO_DATA.....	109
8.1.5	Restart DLC: MAC-RES_DLC.....	110
8.1.6	Connection release: MAC-DIS.....	110
8.1.7	MAC bandwidth: MAC-BW.....	110
8.1.8	Encryption	111
8.1.8.1	Load encryption key: MAC-ENC_KEY.....	111
8.1.8.2	Enable/disable encryption: MAC-ENC_EKS.....	111
8.2	Connectionless and broadcast service primitives.....	111
8.2.1	Paging: MAC-PAGE.....	111
8.2.2	Downlink connectionless: MAC-DOWN_CON.....	112
8.2.3	Uplink connectionless: MAC-UP_CON.....	112
8.3	Management primitives.....	112
8.3.1	Connection control.....	112
8.3.1.1	Connection setup: MAC-ME-CON.....	112
8.3.1.2	Connection setup allowed: MAC-ME-CON_ALL.....	113
8.3.1.3	Bearer release: MAC-ME-REL.....	113
8.3.1.4	MBC release report: MAC-ME-REL_REP.....	113
8.3.2	System information and identities.....	113
8.3.2.1	FP information preloading: MAC-ME-RFP_PRELOAD.....	113
8.3.2.2	PT information preloading: MAC-ME-PT_PRELOAD.....	113
8.3.2.3	System information output: MAC-ME-INFO.....	113
8.3.2.4	Extended system info: MAC-ME-EXT.....	114
8.3.3	Channel map: MAC-ME-CHANMAP.....	114
8.3.4	Status reports: MAC-ME-STATUS.....	114
8.3.5	Error reports: MAC-ME-ERROR.....	114
8.4	Flow control.....	114
8.4.1	MA SAP flow control.....	114
8.4.2	MB SAP flow control.....	115
8.4.3	MC SAP flow control.....	115
9	Broadcast and connectionless procedures.....	117
9.1	Downlink broadcast and connectionless procedures.....	117
9.1.1	Downlink broadcast procedure.....	117
9.1.1.1	Broadcast information.....	117
9.1.1.2	Channel selection for downlink broadcast services.....	118
9.1.1.3	Downlink broadcast procedure description.....	118
9.1.2	Downlink connectionless procedure.....	119
9.1.2.1	Channel selection at the RFP.....	119
9.1.2.2	Downlink connectionless procedure description.....	119
9.1.3	Paging broadcast procedure.....	119
9.1.3.1	RFP paging broadcasts.....	119
9.1.3.2	PP paging procedures.....	122
9.1.3.2.1	PP paging detection.....	122
9.1.3.2.2	PP paging processing.....	122
9.2	Uplink connectionless procedures.....	122
9.2.1	General.....	122
9.2.2	Bearer selection for the connectionless uplink.....	123
9.2.3	Procedure for the connectionless uplink.....	123
9.2.3.1	Predicates.....	123
9.2.3.2	PT D-field construction.....	123
9.2.3.3	PT transmission sequence.....	124
9.2.3.4	FT procedure.....	124
9.3	Non-continuous broadcast procedure.....	125
9.3.1	Request for specific Q-channel information.....	125
9.3.1.1	A-field procedure.....	125

	9.3.1.2	B-field procedure	126
	9.3.2	Request for a new dummy bearer.....	126
10		Connection oriented service procedures	127
10.1		Overview	127
10.2		C/O connection setup	127
	10.2.1	General	127
	10.2.2	Initiation of a basic and a normal connection setup	128
	10.2.3	Initiation of a fast connection setup	128
	10.2.4	Connection setup procedure description	128
	10.2.4.1	Creation of MBCs	128
	10.2.4.2	Establishment of a single bearer duplex connection of a known service type	130
	10.2.4.3	Establishment of multi-bearer connections and connections needing service negotiation.....	132
	10.2.4.3.1	Symmetric connection.....	134
	10.2.4.3.2	Fully asymmetric uplink connection.....	134
	10.2.4.3.3	Fully asymmetric downlink connection	134
	10.2.4.3.4	Connection established	134
10.3		C/O connection modification	135
10.4		C/O connection release	136
	10.4.1	General	136
	10.4.2	Procedure description	137
10.5		C/O bearer setup	137
	10.5.1	Single bearer setup procedures	137
	10.5.1.1	Basic bearer setup procedure.....	137
	10.5.1.2	A-field advanced single bearer setup procedure	140
	10.5.1.2.1	PT initiated.....	140
	10.5.1.2.2	FT initiated.....	144
	10.5.1.3	B-field single bearer setup procedure	144
	10.5.1.3.1	PT initiated.....	144
	10.5.1.3.2	FT initiated.....	147
	10.5.1.4	Double simplex setup procedure	147
	10.5.2	Channel list procedures.....	152
	10.5.2.1	Scope	152
	10.5.2.2	Description of the channel list messages.....	152
	10.5.2.3	Usage of the channel list messages.....	153
10.6		C/O bearer handover.....	154
	10.6.1	General	154
	10.6.2	Duplex bearer handover procedure	154
	10.6.3	Double simplex bearer handover	155
10.7		C/O bearer release	156
	10.7.1	General	156
	10.7.2	Bearer release procedure description	157
	10.7.2.1	Unacknowledged release procedure.....	157
	10.7.2.2	Acknowledged release procedure	157
	10.7.2.3	Fast release procedure	157
10.8		C/O data transfer	158
	10.8.1	Higher layer associated signalling (C).....	158
	10.8.1.1	C _S -channel data	158
	10.8.1.1.1	Transmission principle.....	158
	10.8.1.1.2	Numbering principle	159
	10.8.1.2	C _F -channel data	159
	10.8.1.2.1	Transmission principle.....	159
	10.8.1.2.2	Numbering principle	160
	10.8.1.3	Q1 and Q2 bit settings for I _N and I _P _error detection services	160
	10.8.1.3.1	Q2 bit settings.....	160
	10.8.1.3.2	Q1 bit settings.....	161
	10.8.2	MOD-2 protected I-channel operation (I _P).....	162

	10.8.2.1	General	162
	10.8.2.2	Limiting the lifetime of packets	162
	10.8.2.3	A-field shall always be correct	163
	10.8.2.4	Use of the acknowledge bits	163
	10.8.2.4.1	Q2 and ACK bit setting for Ip_error_correction services	163
	10.8.2.4.2	BCK bit setting	164
	10.8.2.5	Data jump procedures	164
	10.8.2.5.1	Bearer replacement	164
	10.8.2.5.2	Unilateral jump	165
	10.8.2.5.3	MAC Ip bearer reset	166
	10.8.3	Higher layer unprotected information (IN) and MAC error detection services (Ip)	166
	10.8.3.1	IN_minimum_delay service	166
	10.8.3.2	IN_normal_delay and Ip_error_detection services	167
11		Medium access layer management procedures	167
	11.1	Broadcasting	167
	11.1.1	RFP transmission	167
	11.1.2	PP reception	167
	11.2	Extended system information	167
	11.2.1	PP requests	167
	11.2.2	RFP response	167
	11.3	PP states and state transitions	167
	11.3.1	Actions in Idle_Unlocked and Active_Unlocked states	168
	11.3.2	Entry into the Idle_Locked state	168
	11.3.3	Actions in the Idle_Locked state	168
	11.3.3.1	Page detection in Idle_Locked state	169
	11.3.3.2	Setup detection in Idle_Locked state	169
	11.3.4	Idle_Locked and Active_Locked state transitions	169
	11.4	Physical channel selection	169
	11.4.1	The channel selection lists	169
	11.4.2	Physical channel and RFP selection at the PP	172
	11.4.3	Physical channel selection at the RFP	174
	11.4.4	In-connection base identification (handover criteria)	176
	11.5	In-connection quality control	176
	11.5.1	RFPI handshake	176
	11.5.2	Frequency control	176
	11.5.2.1	RFP measurement of frequency error	176
	11.5.2.2	PT frequency correction	176
	11.6	Maximum allowed system load at RFPs	176
	11.7	PMID and FMID definitions	176
	11.7.1	FMID definition	176
	11.7.2	PMID definition	177
	11.8	RFP idle receiver scan sequence	177
	11.9	PT fast set up receiver scan sequence	178
12		Medium access layer test message procedure	179
	12.1	Introduction	179
	12.2	General	179
	12.2.1	Portable part testing	180
	12.2.2	Fixed part testing	180
	12.2.3	Applicability of test messages	180
	12.3	FORCE_TRANSMIT	181
	12.3.1	Portable part	181
	12.3.2	Fixed part	182
	12.4	LOOPBACK_DATA	182
	12.4.1	Portable part	182
	12.4.2	Fixed Part	183

	12.4.2.1	IUTs implementing the DECT scrambler.....	183
	12.4.2.2	IUTs implementing a proprietary scrambler	183
12.5		DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY	183
12.6		FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER	183
12.7		NETWORK_TEST	183
12.8		ESCAPE.....	183
12.9		CLEAR_TEST_MODES.....	183
Annex A (normative): MAC layer timers and constants.....			184
A.1	Timers and Time Windows		184
A.2	Constants		184
Annex C (informative): MAC relationship to other layers.....			186
Annex D (informative): Synchronisation.....			187
Annex E (informative): Scrambling patterns			188
F.1	MAC layer services		189
F.1.1	Connection oriented services.....		189
F.1.2	Broadcast services.....		189
F.2	MAC layer procedures.....		189
F.2.1	Connection oriented service procedures.....		189
	F.2.1.1	General	189
	F.2.1.2	Antenna diversity in connection oriented services	189
		F.2.1.2.1 Q1 setting in direction PT to FT	189
		F.2.1.2.2 Antenna change due to FT reception of Q1	190
		F.2.1.2.3 Antenna change due to poor quality on slot received at FT.....	190
	F.2.1.3	Information for handover	190
		F.2.1.3.1 Q1 and Q2 setting in direction FT to PT.....	190
		F.2.1.3.2 PT reception of Q1 and Q2	190
F.2.2	Broadcast procedures		190
F.3	Scrambling.....		190
F.4	Required messages.....		191
F.4.1	Header field.....		191
F.4.2	Messages in the tail field.....		191
	F.4.2.1	Identities information (N _T tail)	191
	F.4.2.2	System information and multiframe marker (Q _T tail).....	192
	F.4.2.3	Paging (P _T tail)	192
	F.4.2.4	MAC control (M _T tails).....	192
F.4.3	Messages in the B-field		192
F.5	Monitoring of speech quality		192
G.1	Incoming call (feature 16).....		193
G.2	Alphanumeric text messaging and radiopaging service (feature 32)		193
G.2.1	Alphanumeric service via the MAC broadcast service (case A).....		193
G.2.2	Alphanumeric service via the MAC C/L downlink service (case B1).....		194
G.2.3	Alphanumeric service via the MAC C/L downlink and uplink services (case B2).....		194
G.3	Encryption (features 33 and 34).....		195
G.3.1	Connection oriented service procedures.....		195
G.3.2	System information and multiframe marker (Q _T tail).....		195

G.3.3	MAC control (M_T tails)	195
G.4	Selection of bearer service (feature 53)	195
G.5	TARI request	196
G.5.1	Non-continuous broadcast procedure	196
G.5.2	MAC control (M_T tails)	196
Annex H (informative):	Seamless handover operation	197
H.1	I-Channel data flow for I_N _miminum_delay service	197
History	198

Blank page

Foreword

This European Telecommunication Standard (ETS) has been produced by the Radio Equipment and Systems (RES) Technical Committee of the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI), and was adopted, having passed through the ETSI standards approval procedure (Public Enquiry 23: 1991-09-02 to 1991-12-27, Vote 22: 1992-05-25 to 1992-07-17).

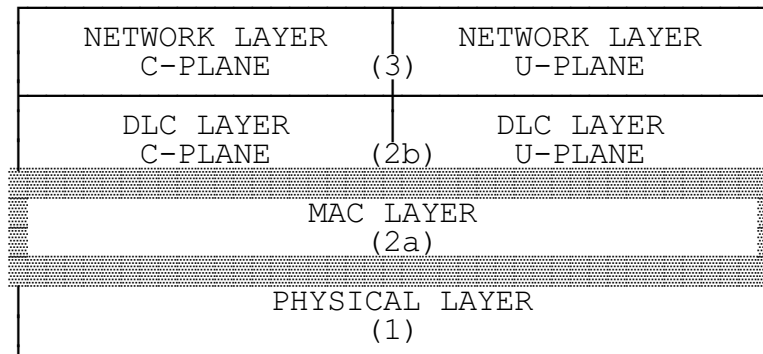
Annex A to this ETS is normative, and Annexes B, C, D, E, F and G are informative.

Further details of the Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) system may be found in ETSI Technical Reports, ETR 015 [16] and ETR 043 [15], and also in draft ETSI Technical Report: "Digital European Cordless Telecommunications system description document" [17].

Blank page

1 Scope

This part of the Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface specifies the Medium Access Control (MAC) layer. The Medium Access Control layer is Part 3 of the DECT Common Interface standard and layer 2a of the DECT protocol stack.



It specifies three groups of MAC services:

- the broadcast message control service;
- the connectionless message control service; and
- the multi-bearer control service.

It also specifies the logical channels that are used by the above mentioned services, and how they are multiplexed and mapped into the service data units that are exchanged with the physical layer.

2 Normative references

This European Telecommunication Standard (ETS) incorporates, by dated or undated reference, provisions from other publications. These normative references are cited at the appropriate places in the text and the publications are listed hereafter. For dated references, subsequent amendments to, or revisions of, any of these publications apply to this ETS only when incorporated in it by amendment or revision. For undated references the latest edition of the publication referred to applies.

- [1] ETS 300 175-1: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 1: Overview".
- [2] ETS 300 175-2: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 2: Physical layer".
- [3] ETS 300 175-3: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 3: Medium access control layer".
- [4] ETS 300 175-4: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 4: Data link control layer".
- [5] ETS 300 175-5: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 5: Network layer".
- [6] ETS 300 175-6: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 6: Identities and addressing".

- [7] ETS 300 175-7: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 7: Security features".
- [8] ETS 300 175-8: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 8: Speech coding and transmission".
- [9] ETS 300 175-9: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common Interface Part 9: Public access profile".
- [10] Reserved.
- [11] Reserved.
- [12] I-ETS 300 176: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Approval test specification".
- [13] Reserved for future ETS version of [12].
- [14] CEPT Recommendation T/SGT SF2 (89) 6/0: "Draft Recommendation T/SF Services and Facilities of Digital European Cordless Telecommunications".
- [15] ETR 043: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) Common interface. Services and facilities requirements specification".
- [16] ETR 015: "Digital European Cordless Telecommunications Reference Document".
- [17] Draft ETSI Technical Report: "Digital European Cordless Telecommunications System description document".
- [18] ETR 042: "Radio Equipment and Systems (RES); Digital European Cordless Telecommunications (DECT) A guide to the DECT features that influence the traffic capacity and the maintenance of high radio link transmission quality, including the results of simulations".
- [19] Reserved for future DECT related document.
- [20] W.W. Peterson and E.J. Weldon (1972, 2nd edit.): "Error Correcting Codes" (MIT Press, Cambridge, MA).

3 Definitions and abbreviations

Most definitions and abbreviations are defined in Part 1 of this ETS, ETS 300 175-1 [1]. A few abbreviations that are specific to this part appear in subclause 3.2.

3.1 Definitions

The following subset of definitions has been extracted from ETS 300 175-1 [1].

Antenna diversity: diversity implies that the RFP, for each bearer independently, can select between different antenna properties such as gain, polarisation, coverage pattern and other features that may effect the practical coverage. A typical example is space diversity, provided by two vertically polarised antennas separated by 10 - 20 cm.

Bearer handover: the internal handover process provided by the Medium Access Control (MAC) layer, whereby one MAC connection can modify its underlying bearers while maintaining the service provided to the Data Link Control (DLC) layer.

NOTE 1: Bearer handover is slot based.

Broadcast: a simplex point-to-multipoint mode of transmission.

NOTE 2: The transmitter may disregard the presence or absence of receivers.

C-Plane: the control plane of the DECT protocol stacks, which contains all of the internal DECT protocol control, but may also include some external user information.

NOTE 3: The C-plane stack always contains protocol entities up to and including the network layer.

Cell: the domain served by a single antenna(e) system (including a leaky feeder) of one fixed part.

NOTE 4: A cell may include more than one source of radiated RF energy (i.e. more than one radio end point).

Central Control Fixed Part (CCFP): a physical grouping that contains the central elements of a fixed part. A fixed part shall contain a maximum of one CCFP.

NOTE 5: A CCFP controls one or more RFPs.

Cluster: a logical grouping of one or more cells between which bearer handover is possible. A Cluster Control Function (CCF) controls one cluster.

NOTE 6: Internal handover to a cell which is not part of the same cluster can only be done by connection handover.

Connection handover: the internal handover process provided by the DLC layer, whereby one set of DLC entities (C-plane and U-plane) can reroute data from one MAC connection to a second new MAC connection, while maintaining the service provided to the network layer.

NOTE 7: Connection handover is DLC frame based.

ConnectionLess mode (C/L): a transmission mode that transfers one packet (one self contained unit) of data from one source point to one (or more) destination points in a single phase.

NOTE 8: Connectionless transmissions require the peer-to-peer associations to be prearranged, and the transmission is unacknowledged at that layer.

Connection Oriented mode (C/O): a transmission mode that transfers data from one source point to one or more destination points using a protocol based on three phases, "setup", "data transfer" and "release".

NOTE 9: Connection oriented mode requires no prearranged associations between peer entities (unlike C/L mode).

Double simplex bearer: the use of two simplex bearers operating in the same direction on two physical channels. These pairs of channels shall always use the same RF carrier and shall always use evenly spaced slots (i.e. separated by 0,5 TDMA frame).

A double-simplex bearer shall only exist as part of a multibearer MAC connection.

Duplex bearer: the use of two simplex bearers operating in opposite directions on two physical channels. These pairs of channels shall always use the same RF carrier and shall always use evenly spaced slots (i.e. separated by 0,5 TDMA frame).

Field: a continuous region of data (i.e. adjacent bits) that jointly convey information. Typically, a message will contain several fields. If data is not continuous then it shall be defined as two (or more) fields.

Fixed Part (DECT Fixed Part) (FP): a physical grouping that contains all of the elements in the DECT network between the Local NetWork (LNW) and the DECT air interface.

NOTE 10: A DECT fixed part contains the logical elements of at least one fixed radio termination, plus additional implementation specific elements.

Fixed radio Termination (FT): a logical group of functions that contains all of the DECT processes and procedures on the fixed side of the DECT air interface.

NOTE 11: A fixed radio termination only includes elements that are defined in the DECT CI standard. This includes radio transmission elements (layer 1) together with a selection of layer 2 and layer 3 elements.

Full slot (slot): one 24th of a TDMA frame which is used to support one physical channel.

Half slot: one 48th of a TDMA frame which is used to support one physical channel.

Incoming call: a call received at a portable part.

Inter-cell handover: the switching of a call in progress from one cell to another cell.

Logical channel: a generic term for any distinct data path. Logical channels can be considered to operate between logical end points.

Lower Layer Management Entity (LLME): a management entity that spans a number of lower layers, and is used to describe all control activities which do not follow the rules of layering.

NOTE 12: In DECT, the LLME spans the network layer, the DLC layer, the MAC layer and the physical layer.

Lower Tester (LT): a logical grouping that contains the test equipment, a functionally equivalent DECT PT, a functionally equivalent DECT FT and a test controller.

MAC bearer (bearer): MAC bearers are the service elements that are provided by each Cell Site Function (CSF). Each MAC bearer corresponds to a single service instance to the physical layer. See also simplex bearer, duplex bearer and double simplex bearer.

MAC connection (connection): an association between one source MAC Multi-Bearer Control (MBC) entity and one destination MAC MBC entity. This provides a set of related MAC services (a set of logical channels), and it can involve one or more underlying MAC bearers.

Multiframe: a repeating sequence of 16 successive TDMA frames, that allows low rate or sporadic information to be multiplexed (e.g. basic system information or paging).

Outgoing call: a call originating from a portable part.

Paging: the process of broadcasting a message from a DECT fixed part to one or more DECT portable parts.

NOTE 13: Different types of paging message are possible. For example, the message orders the recipient to respond with a call setup attempt.

Phase: one discrete part of a procedure, where the start and end of the part can be clearly identified (e.g. by the arrival or dispatch of a primitive).

Physical channel (channel): the simplex channel that is created by transmitting in one particular slot, on one particular RF channel, in successive TDMA frames. See also simplex bearer.

NOTE 14: One physical channel provides a simplex service. Two physical channels are required to provide a duplex service.

Portable Part (DECT Portable Part) (PP): a physical grouping that contains all elements between the user and the DECT air interface. Portable part is a generic term that may describe one or several physical pieces.

NOTE 15: A DECT portable part is logically divided into one portable termination plus one or more portable applications.

Portable radio Termination (PT): a logical group of functions that contains all of the DECT processes and procedures on the portable side of the DECT air interface.

NOTE 16: A PT only includes elements that are defined in the DECT CI standard. This includes radio transmission elements (layer 1) together with a selection of layer 2 and layer 3 elements.

Radio Fixed Part (RFP): one physical sub-group of a fixed part that contains all the Radio End Points (REPs) (one or more) that are connected to a single system of antennas.

Segment: one of the pieces of data that is produced by the process of segmentation.

NOTE 17: In general, one segment only represents a portion of a complete message.

Segmentation: the process of partitioning one Service Data Unit (SDU) from a higher layer into more than one Protocol Data Unit (PDU). The reverse process is assembly.

Simplex bearer: a simplex bearer is the MAC layer service that is created using one physical channel. See also duplex bearer and double simplex bearer.

TDMA frame: a time-division multiplex of 10 ms duration, containing 24 successive full slots. A TDMA frame starts with the first bit period of full slot 0 and ends with the last bit period of full slot 23.

U-Plane: the user plane of the DECT protocol stacks. This plane contains most of the end-to-end (external) user information and user control.

NOTE 18: The U-plane protocols do not include any internal DECT protocol control, and it may be null at the network layer and at the DLC layers for some services.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purpose of this ETS, the following abbreviations apply:

A-MAP	A-field MAP
B-MAP	B-field MAP
BMC	Broadcast Message Control
B _S	slow Broadcast channel
C	higher layer control Channel (see C _S and C _F)
CI	Common Interface (standard)
C/L	ConnectionLess
C/O	Connection Oriented
C _F	higher layer signalling Channel (fast)
CBC	Connectionless Bearer Control
CL	higher layer ConnectionLess channel (protected; see CL _S and CL _F)
CL _F	higher layer ConnectionLess channel (fast)
CL _S	higher layer ConnectionLess channel (slow)
CMC	Connectionless Message Control
C _S	higher layer signalling Channel (slow)
D-MAP	D-field MAP
DBC	Dummy Bearer Control
IUT	Implementation Under Test
E/U-MUX	Switch between E-type and U-type MULTipleXes
ECN	Exchanged Connection Number
FMID	Fixed part MAC IDentity
G _F	higher layer information control channel
I	higher layer Information channel (see I _N and I _P)
I _N	higher layer Information channel (unprotected)
I _P	higher layer Information channel (protected)
IRC	Idle Receiver Control
LBN	Logical Bearer Number

LSB	Least Significant Bit
LT	Lower Tester
M	MAC control channel
MAP	bit MAPpings
MBC	Multi-Bearer Control
MCEI	MAC Connection Endpoint Identification
MSB	Most Significant Bit
MUX	time MULTipleXors
N	identities channel
P	Paging channel
PMID	Portable part MAC IDentity
Q	system information channel
RPN	Radio fixed Part Number
SI _N	higher layer connectionless channel (unprotected)
T-MUX	Tail MUX
TBC	Traffic Bearer Control

4 Description of the medium access layer

4.1 MAC layer reference model

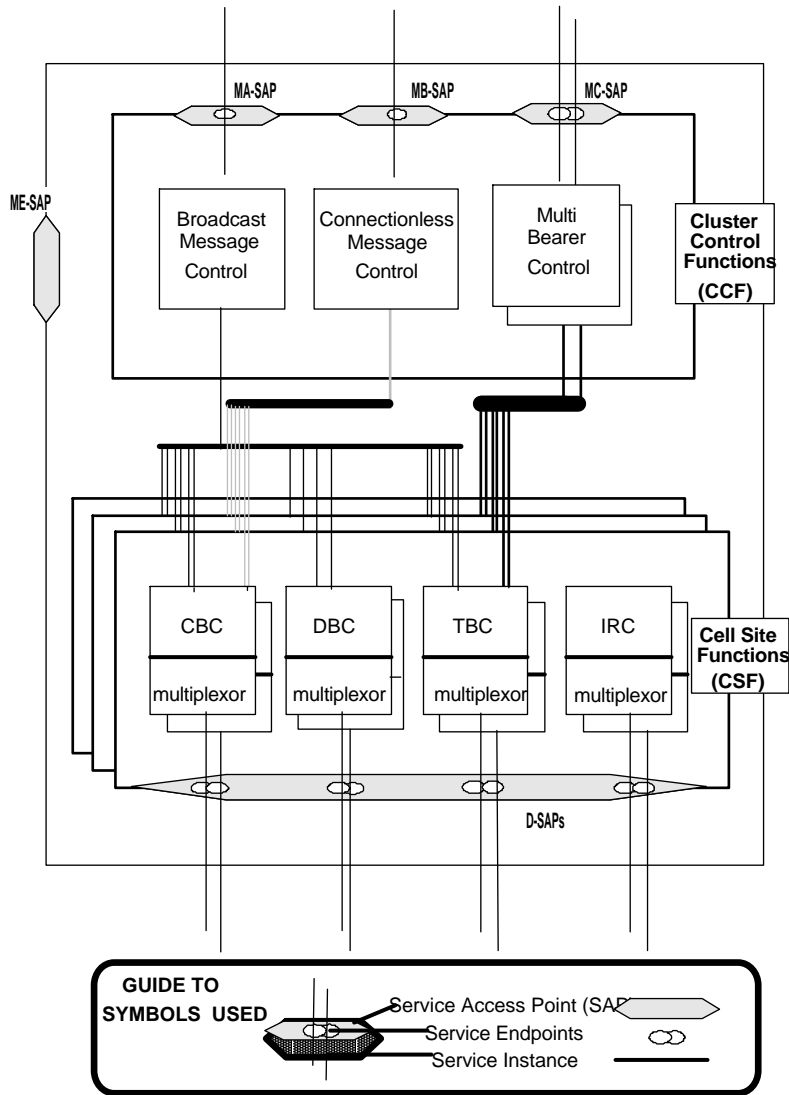


Figure 1 : MAC reference model

NOTE: MA, MB, MC and D are Service Access Points (SAPs) between the adjacent layers. Each line through these SAPs represents an independent service instance. ME is a SAP to the management entity.

4.1.1 General

As far as possible, this ETS avoids defining specific physical architectures, and uses the MAC reference model shown in figure 1. This reference model architecture applies equally to both the FT and the PT.

There is always a single instance of cluster control function that controls all instances of the cell site functions. In the FT, multiple cells would require multiple instances of CSFs (one per cell). Each of these instances connects to an independent physical layer via an independent D-SAP.

The MULTipleX function (MUX) shown at the bottom of all CSFs is described in Clause 6.

4.1.2 Cluster Control Function (CCF)

This includes all the MAC functions that are used to control more than one cell. A cluster contains only one CCF. The CCF contains the following functional elements:

BMC (Broadcast Message Control): the functions that control and distribute the cluster's broadcast information to/from all CBCs, TBCs and DBCs. There is only one BMC per CCF.

CMC (Connectionless Message Control): the functions that control and distribute the information of all connectionless services to one or more CBCs (refer to subclause 5.7 for a description of connectionless services). There is at most one CMC per CCF.

MBC (Multi-Bearer Control): the functions that control the multiplexing and management of all the data directly associated with a MAC connection between one FT and one PT. For single bearer connections (when not performing bearer handover) an MBC only manages one TBC, for multi-bearer connections an MBC will manage several TBCs. There is always only one MBC per connection, and therefore a CCF can contain multiple instances of MBCs (refer to subclauses 5.5 and 5.6 for a description of bearers and connections).

4.1.3 Cell Site Functions (CSF)

This includes all the functions that are concerned with only one cell. Each CSF contains the following functional elements:

CBC (Connectionless Bearer Control): the functions that control a connectionless bearer. Each CSF may contain multiple instances of CBC (refer to subclauses 5.7 and 5.7.2.1).

DBC (Dummy Bearer Control): the functions that control one dummy bearer. There is a maximum of two DBCs per CSF (refer to subclause 5.7).

TBC (Traffic Bearer Control): the functions that control one traffic bearer. Each CSF may contain multiple instances of TBC.

IRC (Idle Receiver Control): the functions that control the receiver when not involved with a bearer. Each CSF may contain multiple instances of IRC, one per transceiver.

Refer to subclause 5.5.2 for descriptions of dummy bearer, traffic bearer, connectionless bearer.

4.1.4 Relationship to physical layer elements

A TBC controls one duplex bearer or one double simplex bearer. It, therefore, controls two physical channels.

A DBC controls one simplex bearer and, therefore, controls one physical channel.

A CBC controls either a simplex or a duplex bearer and, therefore, may control one or two physical channels.

The IRC controls all of the radio transceivers (for one cell) on any of the available physical channels that are not being used by the other entities (TBC, DBC or CBC). This provides various scanning functions defined in subclauses 11.3.2, 11.4.1 and 11.8.

Each instance of the cell site functions relates to one physical cell, and thereby to a single physical layer instance, as shown in figure 2.

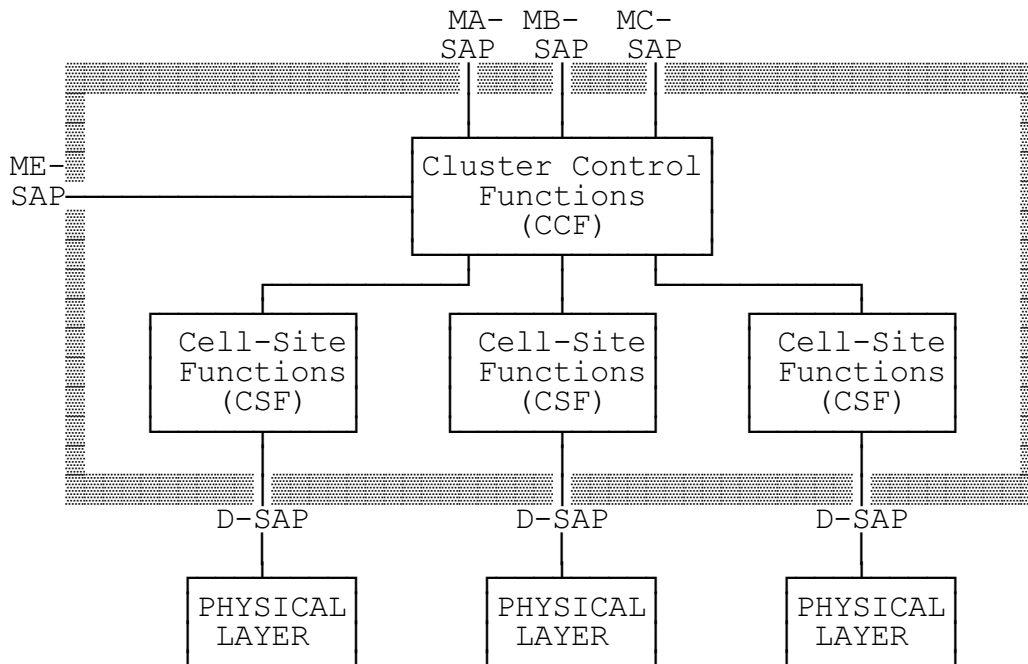


Figure 2 : One MAC cluster

This expanded architecture is only significant for the fixed radio termination. However, the physical groupings of any particular FT implementation may not correspond to these functional groupings, and the MAC architecture is arranged to allow many alternative implementations. For example, manufacturers may choose to implement a single cluster or multiple clusters. In both cases they may choose to distribute everything, to centralise just the cluster control functions or to centralise both the CCF and the CSF. Intermediate physical groupings may be possible for some implementations.

4.2 Frame and multiframe structures

4.2.1 General

There are two hierarchical levels of time division multiplexing:

- frame: a time division multiplex of slots;
- multiframe: a time division multiplex of frames.

Timing is defined by the FP transmissions, and the PP is required to slave all of its transmissions to these timings.

Detailed frame timing is defined by the physical layer, but slot numbering is defined by the MAC layer.

Multiframe timing is wholly defined by the MAC layer.

4.2.2 Frame structure

A regular time division multiple access structure is created by the physical layer (refer to ETS 300 175-2 [2]). This frame defines 24 full-slot positions. Alternatively, each full-slot may be further divided into two half-slots, or two consecutive full slots may be used together as a double slot. See figures 3, 4 and 5.

The MAC layer controls the transmission and/or reception of data for every double, full or half slot, by issuing primitives to the physical layer. Each primitive specifies the operation for one slot position. Continuous operation on a given physical channel requires a regular series of primitives.

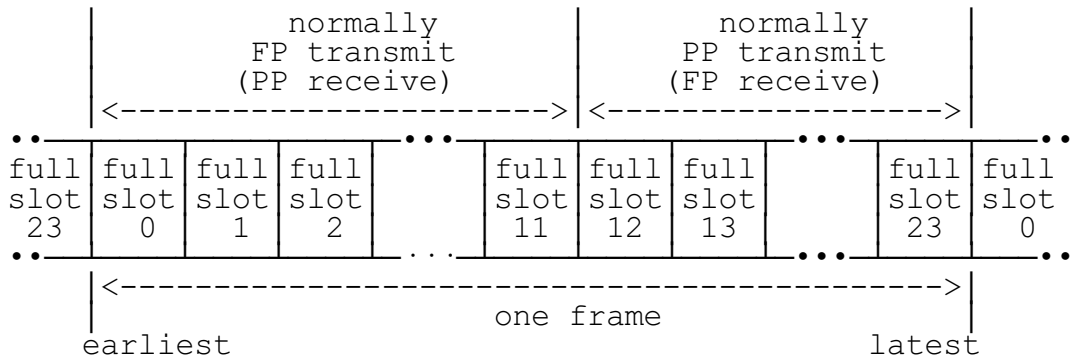


Figure 3

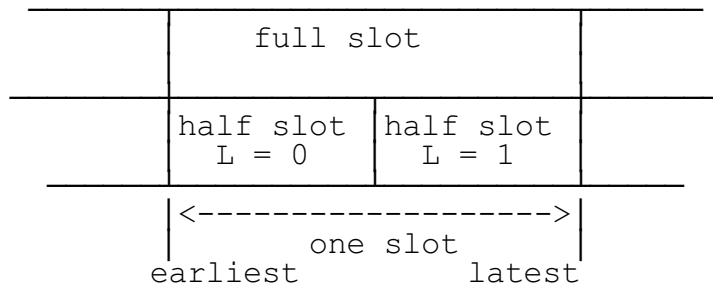


Figure 4

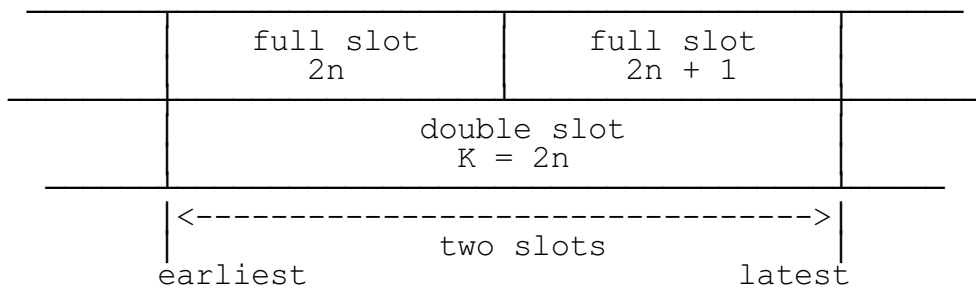


Figure 5

Full-slots are numbered from $K = 0$ to 23, and half-slots are numbered $L = 0$ or 1, where half-slot 0 occurs earlier than half-slot 1. Double slots are numbered from $K = 0$ to 22, where K is an even number, i.e. $K \text{ MOD } 2 = 0$.

Normally slots $K = 0$ to 11 are used in the FP to PP direction, and slots $K = 12$ to 23 in the PP to FP direction.

Slot numbers (frame timing) are not included in every slot transmission. Slot numbers are only defined in a special (Q-channel) message that is transmitted at a low rate by all FPs. This message defines the actual slot number for that transmission. See subclause 7.2.3.

4.2.3 Multiframe structure

The MAC layer superimposes a multiframe structure on the TDMA frame structure. This is a time division multiplex of 16 frames. The multiframe starts and ends on a frame boundary, as shown in figure 6.

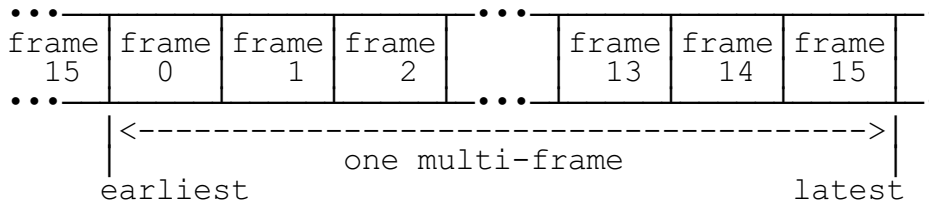


Figure 6

The multiframe numbering is defined in the same way for the FP and the PP. A multiframe normally starts with FP transmissions (first half of frame 0) and ends with PP transmissions (last half of frame 15).

Frame numbers (multi-frame timing) are never included in a transmission. Frame numbers must be interpolated from the multiframe marker that is included in all FP transmissions. This marker appears once per multiframe (in frame 8). See subclauses 6.2.2.1 and 7.2.3.

When encryption is provided, an explicit multiframe number is also defined using a similar technique to slot numbering: a special (Q-channel) message is transmitted at a low rate by the FP. This message defines the actual multiframe number for that transmission. See subclause 7.2.3.

4.3 State definitions

4.3.1 PP states

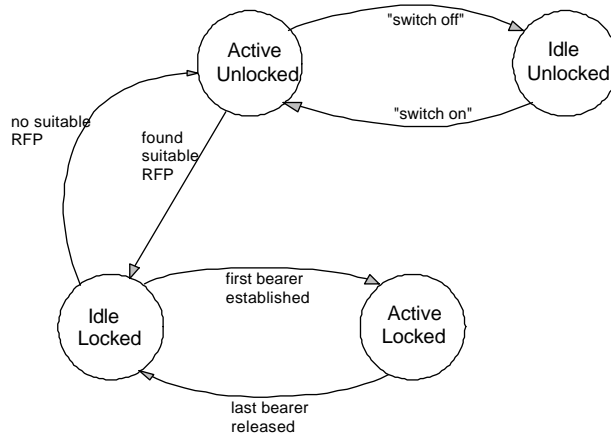


Figure 7 : PP state diagram

A PP can exist in one of four major states at the MAC layer:

- 1) **Active_Locked:** where the PP is synchronised to at least one RFP transmission and has one or more connections in progress.
- 2) **Idle_Locked:** where the PP is synchronised to at least one RFP transmission. It is able to make or receive connections, but has no connections in progress.
- 3) **Active_Unlocked:** where the PP is not synchronised to any RFP transmissions, and is unable to make or receive connections. The PP makes occasional attempts to detect a suitable RFP and enter the Idle_Locked state.
- 4) **Idle_Unlocked:** the PP is not synchronised to any RFP and does not attempt to detect RFPs.

Several different modes of operation exist in the Idle_Locked state:

- a) **Scanning mode:** where the PP's receiver scan sequence is synchronised with that of the RFP.
- b) **High duty cycle Idle_Locked mode:** where the PP receives 6 times per multiframe.
- c) **Normal Idle_Locked mode:** where the PP typically receives once per multiframe.
- d) **Low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode:** where the PP typically receives less than once per multiframe.

4.3.2 RFP states

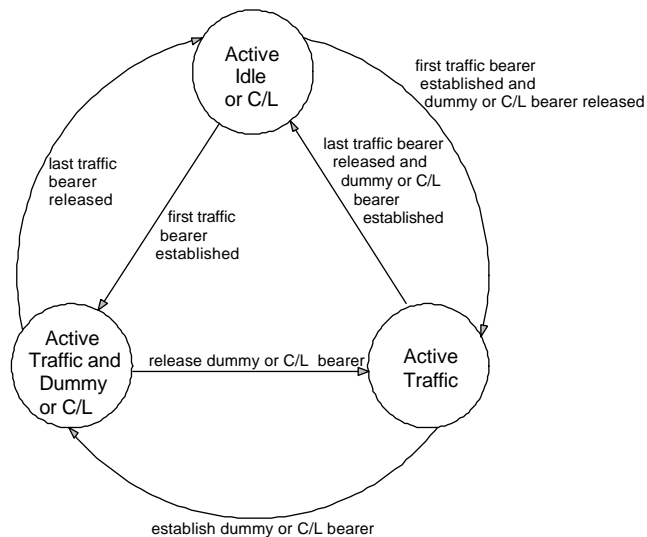


Figure 8 : RFP state diagram

An RFP can exist in one of four major states at the MAC layer:

- 1) **Inactive:** where the RFP is not receiving or transmitting.
- 2) **Active_Idle:** where the RFP has either at least one dummy bearer or at least one connectionless downlink bearer, and a receiver that is scanning the physical channels in a known sequence.
- 3) **Active_Traffic:** where the RFP has at least one traffic bearer, but does not have a dummy or a connectionless downlink bearer.
- 4) **Active_Traffic_and_Idle:** where the RFP has at least one traffic bearer and is also maintaining one dummy or connectionless downlink bearer.

5 Overview of medium access layer services

5.1 General

The MAC layer offers three groups of services to the upper layers and to the management entity. These service groupings are related to the functional groupings in the cluster control functions:

- broadcast message control;
- connectionless message control;
- multi-bearer control.

Each individual service is accessed via an independent service endpoint, and these endpoints are grouped into three service access points. Each service endpoint contains one or more logical channels. A fourth group of logical channels is provided for internal (peer-to-peer) MAC control information. The logical channels are described in subclause 5.3 and the SAPs are described in subclause 5.4.

5.1.1 Broadcast message control

The broadcast message control provides a set of continuous point-to-multipoint connectionless services. These are used to carry internal logical channels, and are also offered to the higher layers via the MA-SAP. These services operate in the direction fixed radio termination to portable radio termination, and are available to all PTs within range.

The BMC services operate on all bearers, with each bearer carrying similar (equivalent) messages. The BMC services may appear alone, but they also appear combined with both of the other services, thereby producing bearers that contain data from two services (i.e. a single physical packet contains fields from both services).

5.1.2 Connectionless message control

The connectionless message control provides connectionless point-to-point or point-to-multipoint services to the higher layers via the MB-SAP. These services may operate in both directions between one specific FT and one or more PTs.

5.1.3 Multi-bearer control

Each instance of multi-bearer control provides one of a set of connection oriented point-to-point services to the higher layers via the MC-SAP. These services may operate in both directions or in one direction between one specific FT and one specific PT. Each service instance provides a connection (a connection oriented service) between one FT and one PT.

An MBC service may use more than one bearer to provide a single service. In this event, these multiple bearers may be used to carry duplicated data (to provide redundancy) and/or distributed data (to provide increased bandwidth).

5.2 Service descriptions

5.2.1 Common functions

All services shall only operate between one FT and one or more PTs.

All the services provide the following functions:

- a) the means to monitor signal quality;
- b) the means to provide error control for some data.

5.2.2 BMC service

The BMC service provides two types of broadcast information in the direction FT to PT:

- permanent broadcasts containing the two MAC control channels, Q and N (see subclauses 5.3.4.1 and 5.3.4.2);
- transient broadcasts containing the MAC paging channel, B_S (see subclause 5.3.3.1).

The BMC service provides the following additional functions to the PT:

- a) the means to acquire and maintain frame and multiframe synchronism between transmitters and receivers;
- b) the means to obtain primary and secondary access right identities;
- c) the means to supply paging messages to the higher layers.

5.2.3 CMC service

The CMC service provides two alternative services:

- higher layer connectionless C-plane information, using the CL_S and CL_F channels (see subclause 5.3.2.1);
- higher layer connectionless U-plane information, using the SI_N channel (see subclause 5.3.2.2).

A single CCF may contain one single CMC instance. This CMC instance cannot be combined with an MBC connection service.

The CMC service provides the following additional function:

- the means to multiplex more than one logical channel onto each MAC bearer of the broadcast, with defined priorities.

5.2.4 MBC services

Each MBC instance can provide two separate connection oriented services to the higher layer:

- higher layer C-plane information, contained in the C-channels (see subclause 5.3.1.1);
- higher layer U-plane information contained in the I and G channels (see subclauses 5.3.1.2 and 5.3.1.3).

These two services are independent, and may be provided in combination or separately as part of a given MBC service. The overall service may be bidirectional, or unidirectional (in either direction). The chosen service type(s), and the service directions are defined during MBC connection establishment.

Each MBC service provides the following additional functions:

- a) the means to set up, maintain and clear down a variety of different connections using one or more bearers (duplex bearers and/or double simplex bearers);
- b) the ability to preserve connection quality by performing individual "bearer handover" of any duplex or double simplex bearers;
- c) the means to multiplex more than one logical channel onto each MAC bearer of the connection, with defined priorities;
- d) the means to encrypt optionally all higher layer data.

5.3 Logical channels

The following logical channels are defined:

a) MBC connection endpoints (MC-SAP logical channels):

C-channels: C_S and C_F ;
I channels: I_N and I_P ;
 G_F channel.

b) CMC service endpoint (MB-SAP logical channels):

CL channels: CL_S and CL_F ;
 SI_N channel.

c) BMC broadcast endpoint (MA-SAP logical channel):

B_S channel.

d) Internal MAC control channels:

Q-channel;
N-channel;
M-channel;
P-channel.

5.3.1 MBC connection endpoints (MC-SAP logical channels)

5.3.1.1 The higher layer C-plane channels, C

Higher layer information from the DLC C-plane uses the C-channels, these are two independent channels, the C_S channel and the C_F channel.

The C_S channel is a slow duplex channel for higher layer information. It offers a low capacity which can be used by the higher layers with virtually no restriction. The transmission of C_S channel data reduces the throughput of the logical N-channel.

The C_F channel is a fast duplex channel for higher layer information with a higher capacity than the C_S channel. Transmissions of C_F channel data may reduce the throughput of, or interrupt, the logical I channel.

All C-channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which uses error correction based on an Automatic Repeat reQuest (ARQ).

5.3.1.2 The higher layer U-Plane channels, I

Higher layer information from the DLC U-plane uses the I channels. These are the I_N channel and the I_P channel, and they have different MAC layer protection schemes. The higher layers choose one of the two channels, the I_N and I_P channels shall not be used in parallel for the same connection.

The I_N information is protected by limited MAC layer error detection (X-field) and may include a minimum delay mode for coded speech transmission. Depending on the physical packet size the MAC layer processes I_N channel data in fields of different length.

The I_P information is protected by MAC layer procedures, either error correction based on a modulo 2 retransmission scheme or just error detection based on 16 bit CRCs. The DLC layer requests a service type, maximum allowed transmission time, and target and minimum acceptable numbers of uplink and downlink bearers which the MAC layer tries to provide.

5.3.1.3 The higher layer U-Plane control channel, G_F

Higher layer U-plane control from the DLC uses the G_F channel.

The G_F channel is a fast simplex channel that is used to provide control of U-plane entities. For example, it is used to carry acknowledgements for asymmetric connections.

All G_F channel information is protected by a MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.3.2 CMC endpoints (MB-SAP logical channels)

5.3.2.1 The connectionless C-Plane channels, C_L

Higher layer connectionless information from the DLC C-plane uses the C_L channels, these are two independent channels, the C_{L_S} channel and the C_{L_F} channel.

The C_{L_S} channel is a slow simplex channel for higher layer information. It offers a low capacity which can be used by the higher layers with virtually no restriction. The transmission of C_{L_S} channel data reduces the throughput of the logical N-channel.

The C_{L_F} channel is a fast simplex channel for higher layer information with a higher capacity than the C_{L_S} channel.

All C_L channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.3.2.2 The connectionless U-Plane channel, SI_N

Higher layer connectionless information from the DLC U-plane uses the SI_N channel.

The SI_N information is protected by limited MAC layer error detection (X-field) and can be used for coded speech transmission. Depending on the physical packet size the MAC layer processes SI_N channel data in fields of different length.

5.3.3 BMC endpoint (MA-SAP logical channel)

5.3.3.1 The slow broadcast channel, B_S

The slow broadcast channel, B_S , is a simplex data channel in the direction FT to PTs. It is used to broadcast transient information from RFPs to all PTs that are listening. B_S channel data is transmitted by RFPs on traffic, connectionless, and dummy bearers. B_S channel information is available to Idle_Locked and Active_Locked PTs.

The transmission of B_S channel data reduces the throughput of the logical N-channel.

All B_S channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

NOTE: A typical use for the B_S channel is to broadcast call set up requests; however, other uses are allowed.

5.3.4 Internal MAC control channels

5.3.4.1 The system information channel, Q

The system information channel, Q , is a simplex data channel used to supply PTs with information about the DECT fixed system. Most Q -channel data is transmitted as repeated broadcasts on traffic, connectionless and dummy bearers. Q -channel data may also be transmitted on request.

Some Q-channel information is needed by a PT to change from the Active_Unlocked state to the Idle_Locked state.

All Q-channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.3.4.2 Identities channel, N

The identities channel, N, is used for repeated transmissions of a system identity. N-channel data is transmitted by RFPs on traffic, connectionless and dummy bearers, and by PTs on traffic bearers.

The identities channel N has two purposes:

- for Active_Unlocked PPs the N-channel has a similar function as the Q-channel. Here the N-channel can be considered as a simplex channel in the RFP to PP direction. The broadcast identity helps active unlocked PPs to find a system which offers the desired service and to which they have access rights;
- for Active_Locked PPs the N-channel is received on all FP to PP bearers and echoed on all PP to FP bearers to provide a MAC layer handshake.

All N-channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.3.4.3 The MAC control channel, M

The M channel is used to carry MAC layer information. This information appears in three different positions:

- MAC control in all header fields (see subclause 6.2.1.2);
- MAC control in a tail field (see subclause 6.2.2.1);
- MAC control in any B-subfield (see subclause 6.2.2.3).

MAC control forms an integral part of all three services. When used on a duplex bearer (as part of the MBC service) it conveys point-to-point MAC control. On all services it is also used to broadcast MAC layer status information.

All M channel information is protected by MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.3.4.4 MAC paging channel, P

The P-channel is used to carry paging messages. Each of these messages may contain one segment of data from the B_S logical channel.

The P-channel appears as a part of all bearers transmitting in the direction FT to PT. The P-channel is normally the only channel that is received by an PT in the Idle_Locked state.

All P-channel information is protected by a MAC layer error control which allows error detection.

5.4 SAP definitions

The MAC layer communicates with the DLC layer through 3 SAPs. These SAPs are the MA SAP, the MB SAP and the MC SAP.

The MAC layer communicates with the management entity through the ME SAP.

The MAC layer communicates with each physical layer instance through an independent D SAP. The D SAP is defined in ETS 300 175-2 [2].

5.4.1 MA SAP

This is a SAP between MAC and DLC Layer. The SAP contains a single broadcast endpoint, containing one logical channel, the B_S channel. The primitives passed through the MA SAP are used to:

- carry B_S channel data; and
- control the data flow of the B_S channel data.

The B_S channel provides a connectionless simplex (broadcast) service in the direction FT to PT.

The permitted SDU lengths in primitives carrying B_S channel data are 0, 20, 36, 72, 108, 144, 180 or 216 bits.

5.4.2 MB SAP

This is a SAP between the MAC and the DLC layer. The MB SAP contains one service endpoint with three logical channels, the CL_F, CL_S and SI_N channels.

The CL_S and CL_F channels provide connectionless services in both directions, FT to PT and PT to FT. In direction FT to PTs the connectionless service is continuous, in direction PT to FT the service is discontinuous.

The permitted SDU length in primitives containing CL_S channel data is 40 bits (= 1 CL_S segment).

The permitted SDU length in primitives containing CL_F channel data is an integer multiple of the CL_F data segment length, which is 64 bits.

The SI_N channel offers one simplex service to the higher layers (FT to PT only).

For the SI_N service the SDU length corresponds to the size of the SI_N data fields in the U-type multiplexes (see subclause 6.2.2.2).

5.4.3 MC SAP

This is a SAP between the MAC and DLC layers. The SAP may contain multiple connection endpoints, and five logical channels are associated with each endpoint; C_S, C_F, G_F, I_N, and I_P channels. Primitives transferred through this SAP are used to:

- control the MAC processes to establish, maintain and release connections;
- carry C_S, C_F, G_F, I_N and I_P channel data; and
- control the data flow of the C_S, C_F, G_F, I_N and I_P channel data.

The C_S and the C_F channel offer two independent connection-oriented duplex services.

For one connection the maximum throughput of C_S channel data is 2 kbps. The SDU length of primitives carrying C_S channel data is equal to the C_S data segment length of 40 bits.

The maximum throughput of C_F channel data is 6,4 kbps for half slot connections, 25,6 kbps for full slot connections, and 64 kbps for double slot connections. For C_F channel data the SDU length is an integer multiple of the C_F data segment length, which is 64 bits.

The I_P and I_N channels offer two independent connection orientated duplex services to the higher layers. One service uses either the logical I_N or the logical I_P channel.

For all data services the SDU length is an integer multiple of the I channel data segment length. The segment length need not be the same for every service and corresponds to the size of the I_N and I_P data fields in the U-type multiplexes (see subclause 6.2.2.2).

The G_F channel offers a connection oriented simplex service. The G_F SDU length is 56 bits.

5.4.4 ME SAP

This is a SAP between the MAC layer and the management entity. There is no formal definition for this interface, i.e. no endpoints and no logical channels are defined.

The following information is transferred:

- control of certain MAC processes (e.g. encryption);
- transfer of certain broadcast data (e.g. fixed part identities).

5.4.5 Order of transmission

Certain primitives exchanged between the MAC layer and the DLC layer may have a service data unit containing peer-to-peer messages. The SDU data is arranged as a list of octets or part octets, starting with octet 1. The bits within one octet are numbered from 1 to 8 where the most significant bit has number 8. The MAC layer transmits these octets in ascending order, starting with octet 1. Valid bits within one octet are transmitted in descending order.

5.5 Bearers

MAC bearers are the elements that are created by each cell site function. Each bearer corresponds to a single service instance to one physical layer. Duplex and double-simplex bearers may be combined by the MBC to provide complete MAC connections to provide a coordinated connection oriented service. See subclause 5.6.

5.5.1 Bearer types

Three types of bearer are defined:

- 1) **simplex bearer:** a simplex bearer is created by allocating one physical channel for transmissions in one direction. Two types of simplex bearers exist, short and long simplex bearers. The short simplex bearers only contain the A-field whereas long simplex bearers contain the A-field and the B-field (refer to subclause 6.2.1). One simplex bearer is created by one dummy bearer controller or by one connectionless bearer controller. A DBC shall always control a short simplex bearer.
- 2) **duplex bearer:** a duplex bearer is created by a pair of simplex bearers, operating in opposite directions on two physical channels. These pairs of channels shall always use the same RF carrier and shall always use evenly spaced time slots (i.e. the starting points of the time slots are separated by 0,5 frame). One duplex bearer is created by one traffic bearer controller or one connectionless bearer controller. A duplex bearer controlled by a TBC always contains the A-field and the B-field in both directions (refer to subclause 6.2.1).
- 3) **double simplex:** a double simplex bearer is created by a pair of long simplex bearers operating in the same direction on two physical channels. These pairs of channels shall always use the same RF carrier and shall always use evenly spaced time slots (i.e. the starting points of the time slots are separated by 0,5 frame). Double simplex bearers shall only exist as part of a multi-bearer connection. One double simplex bearer is created by one traffic bearer controller.

Transmission on a bearer uses the PL-TX primitive, where the SDU in each PL-TX.Req primitive contains the data for one slot (for one transmission).

Reception on a bearer uses the PL-RX primitive, where the SDU in each PL-RX.Cfm primitive contains the data for one slot (for one reception).

5.5.2 Bearer operation

A bearer can exist in one of three operational states:

- 1) **dummy bearer:** where there are normally continuous transmissions (i.e. one transmission in every frame, refer to subclause 5.7). These transmissions never contain data related to the MC or the MB SAP. A dummy bearer only supports BMC services. A dummy bearer is a short simplex bearer.
- 2) **traffic bearer:** where there are continuous point-to-point transmissions that usually contain MC SAP data but never contain data related to the MB SAP. A traffic bearer supports both, BMC and MBC services. A traffic bearer is a duplex bearer or a double simplex bearer.
- 3) **connectionless bearer:** where there are transmissions that may contain MB SAP data but never contain data related to the MC SAP. A connectionless bearer supports both BMC and CMC services. In the direction FT to PTs a connectionless bearer is either duplex if the RFP also supports the connectionless uplink service, or simplex if it does not support the connectionless uplink service. For a PT, a connectionless bearer is either a simplex or a duplex bearer.

"Logical bearer" defines the effective service available from one traffic bearer. During bearer handover two identical duplex or double simplex bearers may exist to provide the service of one logical bearer. At all other times each logical bearer corresponds to one duplex or double simplex bearer.

5.6 Connection oriented services

Each MBC instance creates one MAC connection, and provides an independent service to the higher (DLC) layer. A MAC connection is wholly contained within one cluster, using the services of one or more TBCs within that cluster.

Each MAC connection may use the services of one or more bearers. A single-bearer connection shall use a single duplex bearer. A multi-bearer connection shall use one duplex bearer plus one or more additional duplex and/or double simplex bearers.

5.6.1 Connection types

The MAC provides C-channel and I-channel services to the DLC layer by setting up and maintaining MAC connections.

All RFPs of a cluster shall provide the same capabilities to transmit higher layer control (in particular, the C_F and G_F channel capabilities shall be the same).

Two type of connections are defined:

- basic connections;
- advanced connections.

5.6.1.1 Basic connections

Basic connections have no common connection number (common is defined to mean the same connection number is known at both PT and FT). Therefore, only one basic connection may exist between a PT (identified by its PMID) and one particular FT (identified by the ARI).

Exception: During connection handover two basic connections may exist, serving the same DLC link.

Basic connections only provide one full slot duplex bearer for the I_N _minimum_delay service. Because basic connections are always single bearer connections no Logical Bearer Number (LBN) is assigned to the bearer for these connections.

Basic connections shall not support C_F, G_F and I_p channels and shall not send MAC extended control in the B-field.

5.6.1.2 Advanced connections

Advanced connections have a common connection number, called Exchanged Connection Number (ECN) which is assigned by the LLME. Therefore, more than one advanced connection may exist between a PT and one FT. Advanced connections may provide any service listed in subclauses 5.6.2.1 and 5.6.2.2.

Bearer of advanced connections are labelled by the MAC with logical bearer numbers (LBNs, common parameters). The LBN enables the MAC to distinguish between different bearers in the same connection.

Advanced connections created with the A-field MAC messages (see subclause 10.2.4) may support the C_F channel. If the wanted service needs a G_F channel the connection shall support the C_F channel.

Advanced connections created with the B-field MAC messages shall support the C_F channel.

5.6.1.3 Connection identifiers

Locally each connection (each instance of an MBC) is always identified by a MAC connection endpoint identification. This MCEI allows the DLC to select one particular connection. In the PT the MCEI is assigned by the LLME and is unique within that PT. In the FT the MCEI is assigned by the LLME and is unique within that FT identified by its ARI. In general the MCEIs will be different in the PT and the FT for any given connection.

For advanced connections, a further common identifier, the exchanged connection number, is transmitted between PT and FT. The full identifier consists of ARI + PMID + ECN. PMID and ARI identify the PT and the FT. The ECN allows different advanced connections between the same PT and FT to be distinguished. The DLC and MAC at both ends know this common identifier.

5.6.2 Symmetric and asymmetric connections

The different connection oriented service types are divided into two categories, symmetric and asymmetric connections:

- **symmetric connections** will always have the same number of simplex bearers in both transmission directions. Moreover the service characteristics (see subclause 5.6.2.1) and their bandwidths are the same for both directions;
- **asymmetric connections** have a different number of logical simplex bearers for both transmission directions. Typically, there are only one or two bearers in the "reverse" direction. Although the services in both directions have the same characteristics the bandwidth of the services will differ. Multibearer connections exist only in full slot and double slot transmission mode. This means that asymmetric connections are not permitted in half slot transmission mode. All bearers of a multibearer connection shall be from the same slot type, i.e. either full slot or double slot.

It is also assumed that asymmetric connections are fully asymmetric, that is, 1 channel data only flows in one direction.

In all connections, the DLC gives the MAC a "target number of bearers" and a "minimum acceptable number of bearers" to establish. When the connection has been established (or set up has failed), the MAC tells the DLC the "actual number of bearers" that have been established. In many cases the "target number of bearers" equals the "minimum acceptable number of bearers".

5.6.2.1 Symmetric connections

The four symmetric service types are distinguished by their I channel data protection and their throughput:

- type 1: I_N _minimum_delay: limited error protection, minimum delay, fixed throughput;
- type 2: I_N _normal_delay: limited error protection, normal delay, fixed throughput;
- type 3: I_P _error_detection: error detection capability, fixed throughput; and
- type 4: I_P _error_correction: error correction, variable throughput.

NOTE 1: Service type 1 (I_N _minimum_delay) exists only as single bearer service. I_N _minimum_delay and I_N _normal_delay services have different I channel flow control (see subclause 8.4).

NOTE 2: The throughput of service types 2 and 3 can vary if the MAC layer changes the number of bearers assigned to that connection.

The most important parameters of the four symmetric services are listed in table 1.

Table 1: Symmetric services

S T	I channel cap. (kbit/s)	B-field multiplex schemes	N P	err det.	err corr.	max. CF	dly (ms)
1d 1f 1h	80 32 8 + j/10	(U80a,E80) (U32a,E32) (U08a,E08)	IN IN IN	no no no	no no no	64,0 25,6 6,4	≈10 ≈10 ≈10
2d 2f 2h	k x 80 k x 32 8 + j/10	(U80a,E80) (U32a,E32) (U08a,E08)	IN IN IN	no no no	no no no	64,0 25,6 6,4	15 15 15
3d 3f 3h	k x 64,0 k x 25,6 6,4	(U80b,E80) (U32b,E32) (U08b,E08)	IP IP IP	yes yes yes	no no no	64,0 25,6 6,4	15 15 15
4d 4f 4h	≤ k x 64,0 ≤ k x 25,6 ≤ 6,4	(U80b,E80) (U32b,E32) (U08b,E08)	IP IP IP	yes yes yes	yes yes yes	64,0 25,6 6,4	var var var

S T : Service Type, xd = type x double slot, xf = type x full slot, xh = type x half slot
N P: IN channel or IP channel
err. det.: error detection capability
err. corr.: error correction possibility
max. CF : maximum CF channel throughput
dly : approximate delay incurred by I channel data in ms. "var" is variable
t : the target number of duplex bearers; $w \leq t$
k : the actual number of duplex bearers; $w \leq k \leq t$

NOTE: Refer to subclause 6.2.2.2 for details of B-field multiplex schemes.

5.6.2.2 Asymmetric connections

General principles:

- a) simplex bearers are always allocated in pairs;
- b) pairs of simplex bearers are one half TDMA frame apart;
- c) there exists $(k + m + n)$ simplex bearers where $k \cdot m + n \cdot 1$. k bearers are in the main, "forward" data direction and $m + n$ bearers are in the opposite, "reverse" direction;
- d) all the k bearers in the forward direction have the same format;
- e) the n bearers in the reverse direction are called "special" bearers. Depending on the slot type these bearers have the E32 or the E80 format. They may be used to report reception quality on the double simplex bearers in the forward data direction and carry G_F channel data. These special bearers shall not carry I channel data;
- f) the m data bearers in the reverse direction have the same format as the k bearers in the forward direction.

NOTE 1: Currently only fully asymmetric connections are allowed, so m shall be 0.

NOTE 2: $n > 0$.

The three asymmetric service types are distinguished by their I channel data protection and their throughput:

- type 5: I_N _normal_delay : limited error protection, normal delay, fixed throughput;
- type 6: I_P _error_detection : error detection capability, fixed throughput;
- type 7: I_P _error_correction : error correction, variable throughput.

Table 2 shows the most important parameters for asymmetric connections. The first line in each description defines the forward data direction. The second and third line describe the reverse direction. The same abbreviations are used as in table 1 except:

Table 2 : Asymmetric services

S _T	I channel capacity	B-field multiplex schemes	N _P	err det.	err corr.	max. C _F
5d	k x 80 m x 80 n x 0	(U80a,E80) (U80a,E80) (E80)	IN IN -	no no yes	no no no	64,0 64,0 64,0
5f	k x 32 m x 32 n x 0	(U32a,E32) (U32a,E32) (E32)	IN IN -	no no yes	no no no	25,6 25,6 25,6
6d	k x 64 m x 64 n x 0	(U80b,E80) (U80b,E80) (E80)	IP IP -	yes yes yes	no no no	64,0 64,0 57,6*
6f	k x 25,6 m x 25,6 n x 0	(U32b,E32) (U32b,E32) (E32)	IP IP -	yes yes yes	no no no	25,6 25,6 19,2*
7d	≤ k x 64 ≤ m x 64 n x 0	(U80b,E80) (U80b,E80) (E80)	IP IP -	yes yes yes	yes yes no	64,0 64,0 57,6
7f	≤ k x 25,6 ≤ m x 25,6 n x 0	(U32b,E32) (U32b,E32) (E32)	IP IP -	yes yes yes	yes yes no	25,6 25,6 19,2
ST: Service Type xd: type x double slot xf: type x full slot xh: type x half slot where x = the Service Type NP: IN channel or IP channel err.det.: error detection capability err.corr.: error correction possibility max.C _F : maximum C _F channel throughput k: the actual number of simplex bearers in the forward direction m: the actual number of simplex data bearers in the reverse direction n: the actual number of simplex special bearers in the reverse direction *: it is expected that the "MAC-Mod2-ACKs" message is normally sent on this bearer, reducing the C _F capacity by 6,4 kbps						

NOTE 1: Refer to subclause 6.2.2.2 for details of B-field multiplex schemes.

For type 5, fixed throughput service without error correction, $(k + m + n) \text{ MOD } 2$ shall equal 0, n shall be increased by 1 if necessary.

For type 6, fixed throughput service without error correction, $(k + m + n) \text{ MOD } 2$ shall equal 0, either k, m or n may be increased by 1.

NOTE 2: The throughput of service types 5 and 6 can vary if the MAC layer changes the number of bearers assigned to that connection.

For type 7, variable throughput, variable delay with modulo 2 based retransmission scheme, $(k + m + n) \text{ MOD } 2$ shall equal 0, either k, m or n may be increased by 1.

5.7 Broadcast and connectionless services

Most of the broadcast and connectionless services shall be continuous in the downlink direction, i.e. from FT to PT, and non-existent or non-continuous in the uplink direction.

To provide the continuous downlink services a CSF may install one or two bearers which either supports only the broadcast service, i.e. dummy bearers, or which supports the broadcast and the connectionless services, i.e. connectionless bearers.

If two bearers are installed both bearers shall support the same services. The maximum of two bearers for one CSF is only allowed when:

- a) no traffic bearer with downlink transmissions exists at the CSF; and
- b) the FP has multiple RFPs with different FMIDs (refer to subclause 11.7), and provides inter-cell handover capability.

If a CSF uses two bearers for this service, the CSF shall stop transmissions on one of these bearers, (i.e. release the bearer), within 4 multiframes after establishment of the first traffic bearer with downlink transmissions.

The only exception to the above rule applies when the CSF decides to change the physical channel(s) for one of these particular bearers. In this case the CSF may maintain one additional bearer to provide the continuous downlink services for a duration of up to 4 multiframes. At most one bearer for this continuous downlink service may change the physical channel(s) at the time. The number of physical channel changes for this exception shall not exceed 5 changes per any one minute interval.

If a DBC or CBC is selected for the continuous downlink service this bearer shall normally transmit once per frame in downlink direction. The only allowed exception applies for quality control purposes of the chosen physical channel, e.g. RSSI measurements. A DBC or CBC may miss at most one downlink transmission in any one second interval, provided that:

- a) CMC services are not affected (CBC only);
- b) the BMC paging service (refer to subclause 9.1.3) is not affected.

It is further not allowed to miss transmissions in frames 0,8 and 14 of a multiframe (refer to subclause 6.2.2.1.1).

NOTE: If no CMC service is provided, the broadcast service may be offered by a traffic bearer of an ongoing connection. The exception of missing one frame's transmission does not apply for the TBC controlling this traffic bearer.

PT attempts to setup a traffic bearer using the same physical channel(s) as used for a connectionless downlink service shall be ignored by the CSF. With the system capabilities message the FT tells the PT whether or not a bearer setup attempt on dummy bearer(s) is allowed. If setup is prohibited a CSF shall ignore attempts to setup a bearer using the same physical channel as a dummy bearer.

5.7.1 The broadcast services

Two broadcast services are defined, a continuous and a non-continuous broadcast service.

5.7.1.1 The continuous broadcast service

The continuous broadcast service is a simplex service in the direction FT to PT, and is controlled by the BMC.

This service allows PTs to lock on to an FT and to acquire access rights and service related information (see subclause 5.2.2). The service is available on all bearers with continuous transmissions in direction FT to PT. This can be a dummy bearer, a traffic bearer or a connectionless bearer.

Each RFP of an FP shall maintain at least one bearer with continuous broadcast transmissions. If an RFP maintains neither a traffic bearer nor a connectionless bearer with continuous transmissions the RFP shall install at least one dummy bearer to provide the broadcast service. Dummy bearers exist only in the downlink direction, i.e. FT to PT.

Data of the continuous broadcast service are always transmitted in the A-field (refer to subclause 6.2.1). The functionality of the service is determined by the rules to distribute data from all broadcast channels into the A-field of consecutive frames within one multiframe (refer to subclause 6.2.2).

5.7.1.2 The non-continuous broadcast service

The non-continuous broadcast service allows the PTs to obtain extended system information on request. This service is controlled by the BMC and works on a transient duplex bearer. The service needs a limited number of transmissions in both directions.

The request and the reply data are transmitted either in the A-field or in the B-field (refer to subclause 6.2.1). The non-continuous broadcast service uses a unique A-field coding for the first transmission in either direction (refer to subclause 7.2.5.6). This is in order to distinguish transmissions of this service from transmissions of other connectionless services

5.7.2 The connectionless services

The connectionless services allow multicast transmission of higher layer C-plane and U-plane data from an FT to PTs, and point-to-point transmission of higher layer C-plane data from a PT to one FT. These services are controlled by the CMC. The FT to PTs connectionless service may be continuous (i.e. one transmission in every frame). In the direction PT to FT, transmission is limited to a maximum of two slots in two successive frames.

5.7.2.1 Connectionless downlink services

The connectionless downlink service offers a continuous simplex service to the DLC. Only one CMC downlink service may exist within each cluster.

Connectionless bearers used for a downlink service are marked by a special header code and may also be announced by using the BMC service.

A connectionless downlink service shall use CBCs controlling a duplex bearer or, if the CMC does not provide an uplink service, CBCs controlling a simplex bearer. If two CBCs are installed at a CSF to provide the connectionless downlink service all data of this service shall be duplicated on both CBCs.

NOTE 1: The number of allowed CBCs per CSF for connectionless downlink services is restricted (refer to subclause 5.7).

NOTE 2: Connectionless downlink and uplink services are independent.

NOTE 3: A connectionless uplink service may choose another bearer than the duplex bearer which is used for the downlink service.

Three types of continuous connectionless simplex services exist. They are distinguished by the logical channels supported:

- a) only CL_S channel;
- b) CL_S and CL_F channels;
- c) CL_S and SI_N channels.

Service a) shall always use a short simplex bearer for the downlink. The services b) and c) use a long simplex bearer.

5.7.2.2 Connectionless uplink services

This service uses a CBC controlled bearer. Provided that the CBC controls both, the connectionless downlink and uplink service, this bearer is a duplex bearer. Otherwise the CBC controls a simplex bearer. The connectionless uplink service consists of one or two transmissions from the PT to the FT.

The following simplex services are offered to the DLC:

- a) CL_S-channel only, one CL_S segment;
- b) CL_F-channel only; and
- c) no SDU (only PMID passed to the FT's DLC).

Services a) and c) may use either a short simplex bearer or a long simplex bearer for the uplink. Service b) always uses a long simplex bearer for the uplink. All services may work together with either a short simplex bearer or a long simplex bearer for the downlink.

The PT uses A-field messages to address the RFP and to identify itself.

6 Multiplexing

To allocate DECT D-channel capacity to carry data from all logical channels defined in subclause 5.3, several controllers, multiplex algorithms and mapping schemes are used. Figures 9 to 12 show the four possible MAC layer multiplexing structures, corresponding to the four bearer arrangements.

6.1 CCF multiplexing functions

The MBC establishes and maintains a connection and controls the data flow of the I and C-channels. For these purposes the MBC uses MAC control.

In the transmission direction the MBC distributes the data received through the MC SAP to all the TBCs in one connection. This includes the routing of C-channel data to one TBC or duplication of this data to more than one TBC and the careful management of data from all channels to two TBCs during seamless bearer handover.

In the receiving direction the MBC collects data from all TBCs. For C-channel data the receiving traffic controller removes duplicate data and performs resequencing.

For I-channel services the MBC is either responsible for resequencing the data or it applies a retransmission scheme to correct transmission errors (see subclause 10.8).

Each MBC may contain a key stream generator. This element produces a cypher stream to encrypt or decrypt all I, G_F and C-channel data.

The BMC manages and distributes N, Q and B_S-channel data.

6.2 CSF multiplexing functions

Every TBC or CBC or DBC multiplexes data received from BMC, from CMC and from MBC onto D-fields for delivery to the physical layer. The following functions are defined:

MAC control: MAC control is needed to setup, maintain and release bearers, and to enable/disable encryption.

Bit MAPPings (MAP): MAPs are spatial multiplexers, that combine two or more fields into a single (larger) field. Three MAPs are defined: A-MAP, B-MAP and D-MAP.

Time MULTipleXers (MUX): MUXs are used to switch between alternative fields on a frame-by-frame basis. They operate synchronously to the applied frame and multiframe timing. Three MUXs are defined: C-MUX, T-MUX and E/U MUX.

Scrambler: scrambling is used to modify specific data fields every frame according to a standard (predefined) pattern (refer to subclause 6.2.4).

Encryption: encryption is used to modify specific data fields according to a secret pattern (denoted KSG in figure 9) (refer to subclause 6.2.3). The use of encryption is optional.

Error control (CRC): the error control modules generate extra error control bits (redundancy bits) according to standard cyclic generation algorithms (refer to subclause 6.2.5).

Broadcast control: this is used to merge MAC information with higher layer information as part of the BMC service.

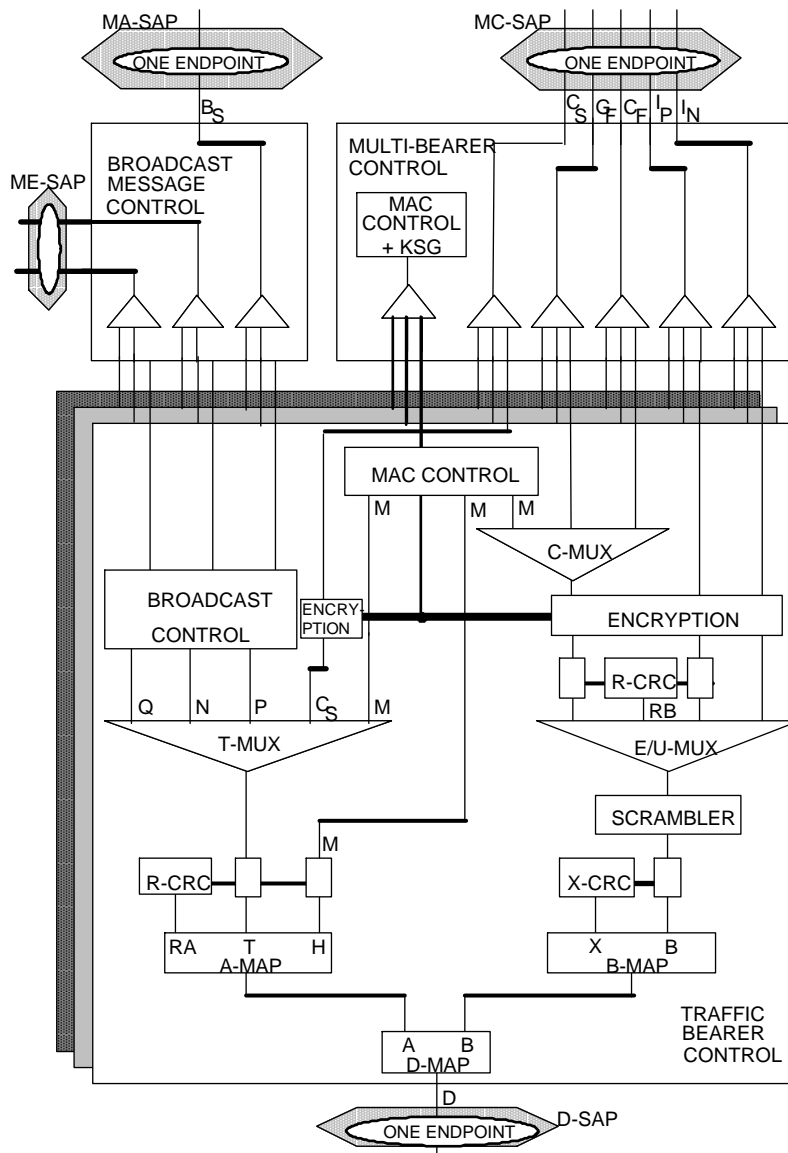


Figure 9 : TBC multiplexing

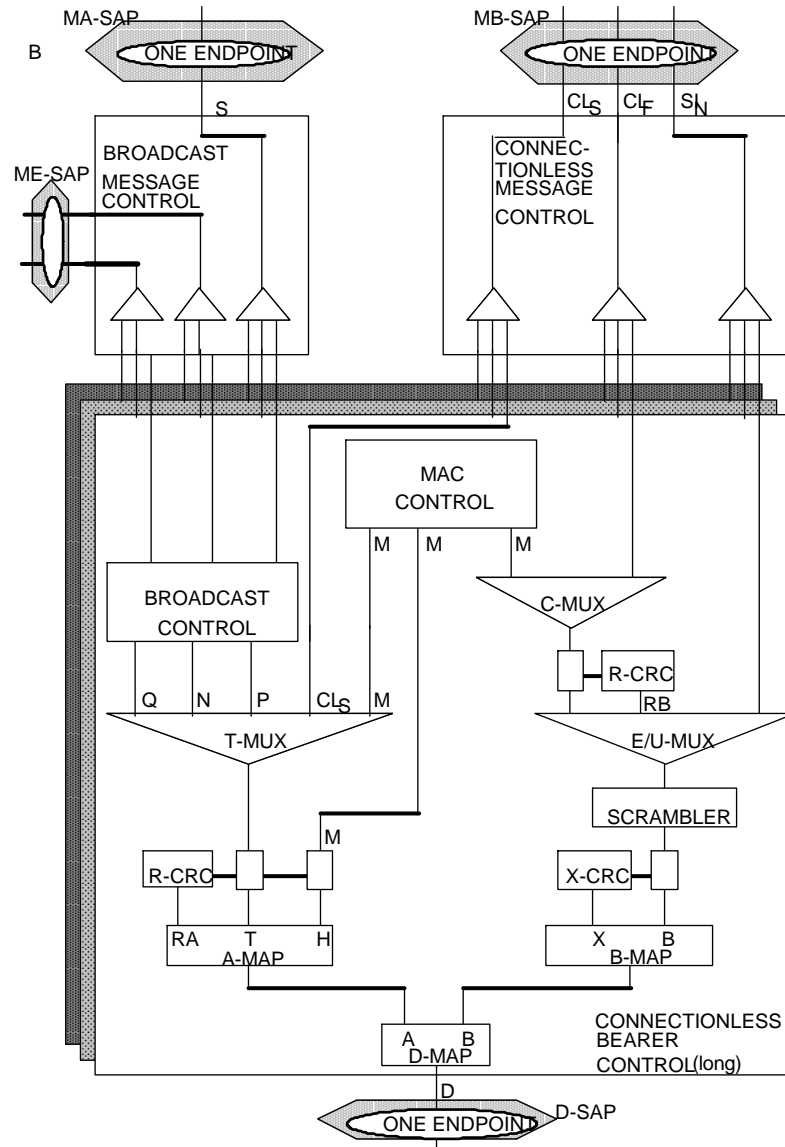


Figure 10 : CBC multiplexing (long)

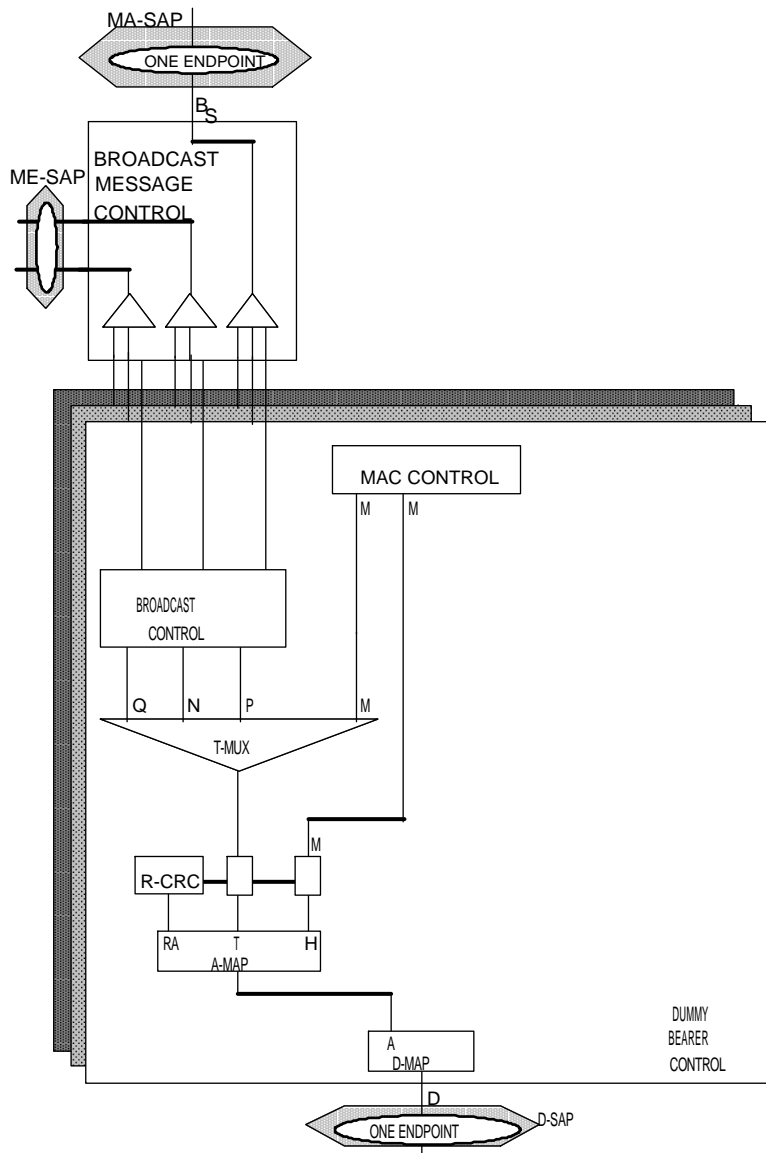


Figure 11 : DBC multiplexing

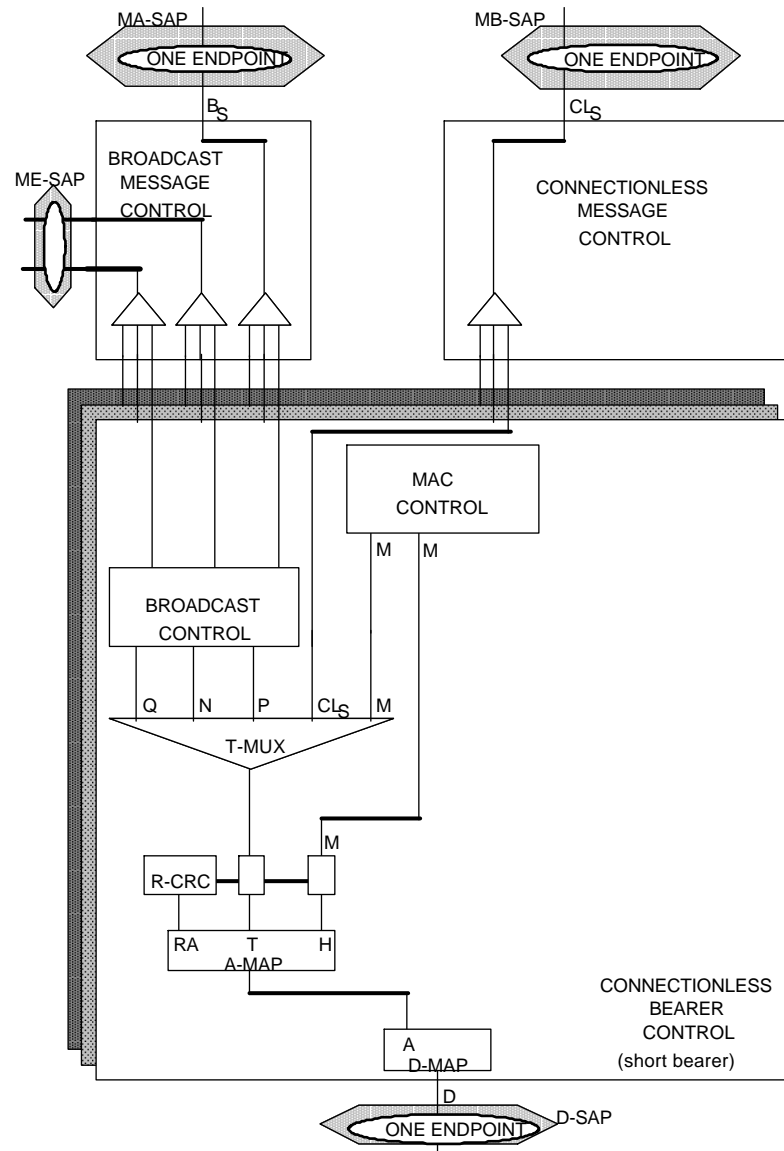


Figure 12 : CBC multiplexing (short)

6.2.1 Bit MAPpings (MAP)

All of the mappings follow fixed schemes. The A-MAP builds the A-field with the header and tail bits. It's mapping rule is described in subclause 6.2.1.2. The D-MAP forms the DECT D-field data burst with the A- and B-fields.

The size of the B-field depends upon the physical packet size. Four sizes of D-field are defined, corresponding to these physical packets:

- D80 field; for double slot operation;
- D32 field; for full slot operation;
- D08 field; for half slot operation;
- D00 field; for short slot operation.

6.2.1.1 D-field MAPping (D-MAP)

The D-fields D80, D32 and D08 are divided into two fields:

- the A-field; and
- the B-field.

Field A contains 64 bits numbered from a_0 to a_{63} where a_0 occurs earlier than a_1 . The B-field occupies the rest of the D-field and varies in size between full slots and half slots.

In the D80 field the B-field contains 804 bits which are numbered from b_0 to b_{803} where b_0 occurs earlier than b_1 .

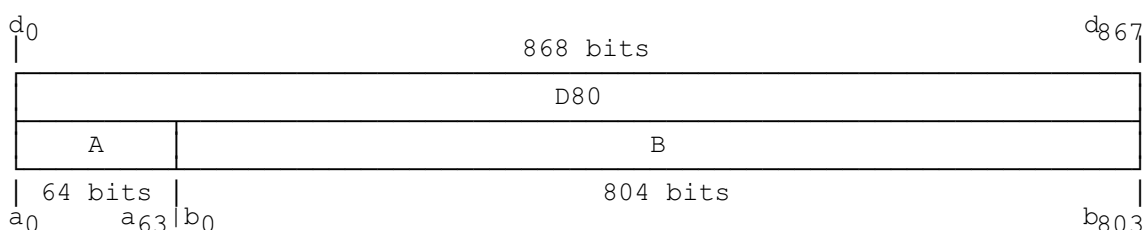


Figure 13 : A-field and B-field in the D80 field

In the D32 field the B-field contains 324 bits which are numbered from b_0 to b_{323} where b_0 occurs earlier than b_1 .

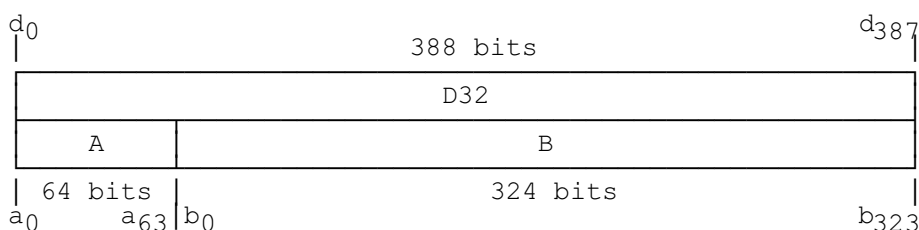


Figure 14 : A-field and B-field in the D32 field

In the D08 field the B-field contains $84+j$ bits which are numbered from b_0 to b_{83+j} where b_0 occurs earlier than b_1 .

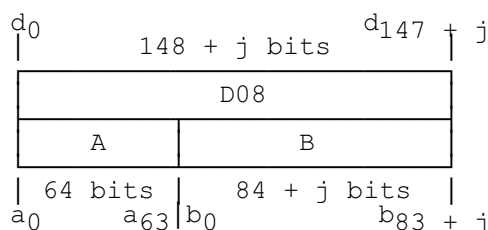


Figure 15 : A-field and B-field in the D08 field

NOTE 1: With $j = 0$ the guard space is the same for half slots as for full slots (see ETS 300 175-2 [2]). The ability to set j provides flexibility for future low rate speech codec applications.

NOTE 2: j can only be selected from one of the values defined in this ETS. Currently the only defined value for j is $j = 0$. Other values of j are subject to future standardisation.

The default value of j for the D08 field shall be 0.

The D-field D00 for short slot operation only contains the A-field.

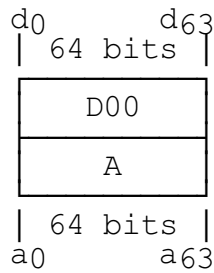


Figure 16 : The D00 field containing the A-field

6.2.1.2 A-field MAPping (A-MAP)

The division of the A-field into Header (H), Tail (T), and Redundancy (RA) bits, is the same for all mappings and shown in figure 17.

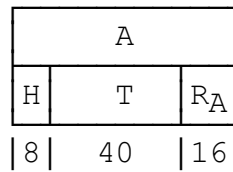


Figure 17 : A-field mapping

The header, H, is located in bits a0 to a7 and contains the 8 bit MAC layer permanent control data field.

The tail, T, contains 40 bits and is located in bit positions a8 to a47.

The remaining 16 bits a48 to a63 are redundancy bits, RA, to provide error control on all the A-field data. See subclause 6.2.5.2 for the calculation of the value of these bits.

By definition the header field always contains the MAC control information.

The tail carries data from several logical channels, using the T-MUX algorithm defined in subclause 6.2.2.1.

6.2.1.3 B-field MAPping (B-MAP)

For the B-field two mappings exist, a protected format and an unprotected format. With the unprotected format the 4 bit X-field at the end of the B-field contains the only redundancy bits in the B-field.

Unprotected formats: in the unprotected double slot format the mapping of the A-field and B-field onto the D80-field of physical packets P80 is shown in figure 18 and described as:

$$\begin{aligned} d_i &= a_i & : & & 0 \leq i \leq 63, \\ b_i - 64 & & : & & 64 \leq i \leq 867. \end{aligned}$$

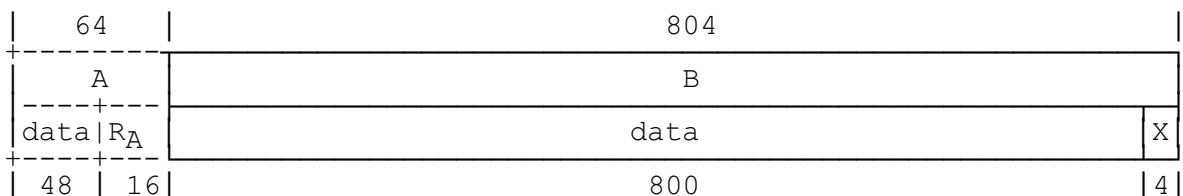


Figure 18: Unprotected B-field format (double slot)

In the unprotected full slot format the fields A and B are mapped onto the D32-field of physical packets P32 as follows:

$$\begin{matrix} d_i = a_i & : & 0 \leq i \leq 63, \\ b_i - 64 & : & 64 \leq i \leq 387. \end{matrix}$$

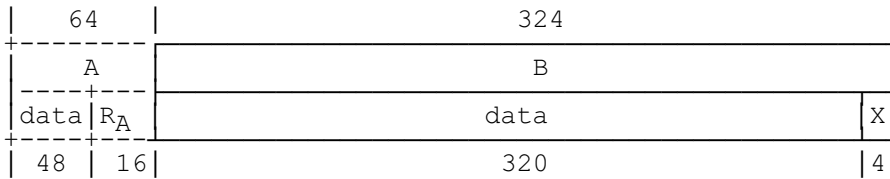


Figure 19: Unprotected B-field format (full slot)

In the unprotected half slot format the mapping of the A-field and B-field onto the D08-field of physical packets P08 is shown in figure 20 and described as:

$$\begin{matrix} d_i = a_i & : & 0 \leq i \leq 63, \\ b_i - 64 & : & 64 \leq i \leq 147 + j. \end{matrix}$$

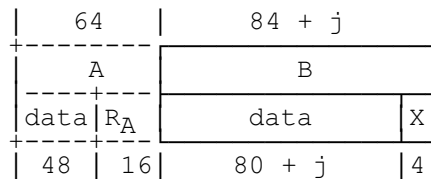


Figure 20: Unprotected B-field format (half slot)

Protected formats: the protected formats divide the B-field into subfields. The last 4 bits are always the X-field. The other bits are divided into subfields of 80 bit length, where the first subfield starts with the first bit in the B-field. The subfields are numbered B0, B1, B2 etc. The last subfield before the X-field may have a smaller length than 80 bits. The bit b_{ki} from the B_k subfield corresponds to the bit $b_{(80k+i)}$ of the B-field.

All 80 bit subfields consist of a 64 bit data block followed by 16 CRC bits (R_{Bj} -fields). In all protected formats the 80 bit subfield B0 is placed in the same relative position to the synchronisation word and starts with the 65th bit of the physical channel's D-field.

Figure 21 shows the protected double slot format, which is described as:

$$\begin{matrix} d_i = a_i & : & 0 \leq i \leq 63 \\ b0_i - 64 & : & 64 \leq i \leq 143 \\ b1_i - 144 & : & 144 \leq i \leq 223 \\ b2_i - 224 & : & 224 \leq i \leq 303 \\ b3_i - 304 & : & 304 \leq i \leq 383 \\ b4_i - 384 & : & 384 \leq i \leq 463 \\ b5_i - 464 & : & 464 \leq i \leq 543 \\ b6_i - 544 & : & 544 \leq i \leq 623 \\ b7_i - 624 & : & 624 \leq i \leq 703 \\ b8_i - 704 & : & 704 \leq i \leq 783 \\ b9_i - 784 & : & 784 \leq i \leq 863 \\ x_i - 864 & : & 864 \leq i \leq 867 \end{matrix}$$

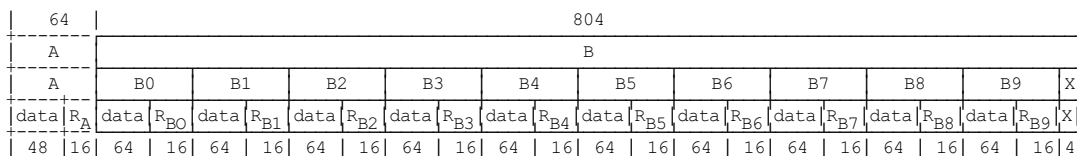


Figure 21: Protected B-field format (double slot)

For the protected full slot format a more detailed mapping is shown in figure 22 and described as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
d_i = a_i & : 0 \leq i \leq 63 \\
b0_i - 64 & : 64 \leq i \leq 143 \\
b1_i - 144 & : 144 \leq i \leq 223 \\
b2_i - 224 & : 224 \leq i \leq 303 \\
b3_i - 304 & : 304 \leq i \leq 383 \\
x_i - 384 & : 384 \leq i \leq 387
\end{aligned}$$

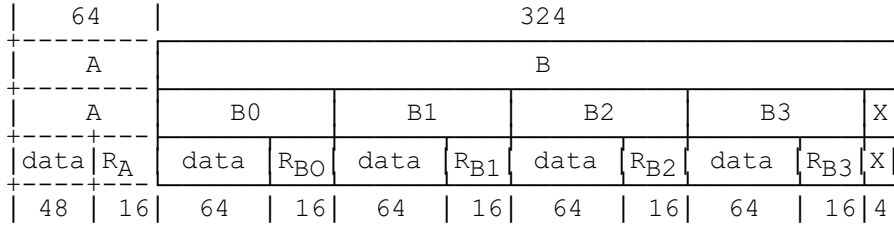


Figure 22 : Protected B-field format (full slot)

With a B-field length of 84 + j bits in half slot mode, a subfield B1 only exists for j > 0. The use of this field in the protected half slot format is undefined. Keeping this field allows the unprotected and the protected format to have the same size. Therefore, for a chosen j the X-field is in the same position in both formats. This allows the same X-field procedure to be used for measuring the performance of the physical channel in both protected and unprotected half slot formats.

Figure 23 shows the protected half slot format, which is described as:

$$\begin{aligned}
d_i = a_i & : 0 \leq i \leq 63 \\
b0_i - 64 & : 64 \leq i \leq 143 \\
(b1_i - 144 & : 144 \leq i \leq 143 + j; j > 0) \\
x_i - 144-j & : 144 + j \leq i \leq 147 + j.
\end{aligned}$$

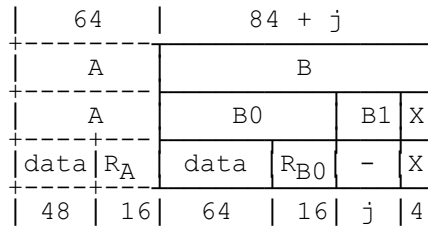


Figure 23 : Protected B-field format (half slot)

The B-field format is controlled by the E/U MUX. This is described in subclause 6.2.2.2.

In the unprotected format, the single data field may only carry data from the I_N logical channel.

In the protected format, the data fields may carry data from different logical channels. The contents are defined by the E/U MUX (subclause 6.2.2.2) and the C-MUX (subclause 6.2.2.3).

Any operation of the E/U MUX shall not alter the value of j for half slot operation. The value of j shall be agreed at connection set up and shall not be changed during the connection unless an appropriate MAC-MOD primitive is received.

6.2.2 Time multiplexers

A T-MUX (tail-multiplex) changes the tail T, which can be one of the tail types, P_T, Q_T, N_T, C_T and M_T. A E/U-MUX selects between E-type and U-type. The C-MUX controls the mode of the B-field, distributing the flow of MAC control information, M, G_F, C_F, and CL_F data into the B-field.

T-MUX algorithms are different for RFPs and PTs because PTs do not transmit P and Q-channels. C-MUX and E/U-MUX algorithms are the same for both equipments.

6.2.2.1 Tail MULTipleXer (T-MUX)

The tail, T, contains 40 bits. The logical channels carried in the tail depend upon the tail type. This is detailed in table 3 below.

Table 3

Tail type	Tail contents
C_T	one C_S or CL_S -channel segment
M_T	one M-channel message
N_T	one N-channel message
P_T	one P-channel message (see subclause 7.2.4 and subclause 9.1.3)
Q_T	one Q-channel message

NOTE: These tail types are multiplexed on a frame-by-frame basis.

6.2.2.1.1 T-MUX algorithm for RFP transmissions

The DECT RFPs support a multiframe structure of 16 frames duration. Both frame and multiframe timing shall be synchronised for all RFPs of one DECT fixed system.

The 16 frames in one multiframe are numbered from frame 0 to frame 15. Once every multiframe, a special tail identification is sent in the header, H, to mark frame number 8 of the multiframe.

In all odd frames the tail contains either M_T , C_T or N_T . The applied " M_T , C_T , N_T " priority scheme means:

- M_T type tails have priority over;
- C_T type tails which have priority over the;
- N_T type tails.

In frames a " P_T , N_T " priority scheme is used:

- P_T type tails have priority over the N_T type tails.

The tail of frame 14 is reserved for N_T (" N_T " priority scheme) and the tail of frame 8 is reserved for Q_T information (" Q_T " scheme).

The resulting algorithm is given in table 4 below.

Table 4

Frame	Prio. Scheme	Frame	Prio. scheme
0	P_T, N_T	1	M_T, C_T, N_T
2	P_T, N_T	3	M_T, C_T, N_T
4	P_T, N_T	5	M_T, C_T, N_T
6	P_T, N_T	7	M_T, C_T, N_T
8	Q_T	9	M_T, C_T, N_T
10	P_T, N_T	11	M_T, C_T, N_T
12	P_T, N_T	13	M_T, C_T, N_T
14	N_T	15	M_T, C_T, N_T

Exceptions: When responding to a "bearer request" message or during bearer release, the FT may insert an M_T tail in an even numbered frame. These are the only exceptions.

The following throughput capacities are achieved:
 (fpmf = frames per multiframe):

C_T : higher layer control	0 - 2 kbps	0 - 8 fpmf
M_T : MAC layer control	0 - 2 kbps	0 - 8 fpmf
N_T : identities information	0,25 - 3,75 kbps	1 - 15 fpmf
lower limit, excluding exceptions as above	0,25 kbps	1 fpmf
P_T : paging	0 - 1,5 kbps	0 - 6 fpmf
Q_T : system information, excluding exceptions as above	0,25 kbps	1 fpmf

6.2.2.1.2 T-MUX algorithm for PT transmissions

The algorithm shown in table 5 below is used by PTs for all traffic bearers in connection oriented services:

Table 5

Frame	Prio. scheme	Frame	Prio. scheme
0	M _T , C _T , N _T	1	N _T
2	M _T , C _T , N _T	3	N _T
4	M _T , C _T , N _T	5	N _T
6	M _T , C _T , N _T	7	N _T
8	M _T , C _T , N _T	9	N _T
10	M _T , C _T , N _T	11	N _T
12	M _T , C _T , N _T	13	N _T
14	M _T , C _T , N _T	15	N _T

Exceptions: The transmission of a "bearer request" or a "bearer release" from a PT may use an M_T tail and this may be placed in any frame (subclause 10.5 and 10.7).

The following throughput capacities are achieved (fpmf = frames per multi-frame):

- N_T: identities information 0,25 - 3,75 kbps 1 - 15 fpmf

- C_T: higher layer control 0 - 2 kbps 0 - 8 fpmf
- M_T: MAC layer control 0 - 2 kbps 0 - 8 fpmf

- N_T: identities information 2 - 4 kbps 8 - 16 fpmf
- lower limit, excluding exceptions as above 2 kbps 8 fpmf

Connectionless uplink services and requests for a BMC service always start with a M_T message in the first PT transmission (see subclause 7.2.5.6). Only for connectionless uplink services a second transmission may occur. This second transmission uses a C_T tail when a CL_S segment is carried and a M_T tail otherwise.

6.2.2.2 B-field control multiplexer (E/U-MUX)

The E/U MUX switches the B-field between two types of multiplex, the E-type and the U-type.

- 1) **E-type:**
 - for traffic bearers the B-field is used to carry M-channel data and/or C_F-channel data and/or G_F-channel data. For connectionless bearers the B-field is used to carry M-channel data and/or CL_F-channel data.

- 2) **U-type:**
 - the B-field is used to carry either I_N-channel data or I_P-channel data or SI_N-channel data.

The E/U MUX operates on a frame-by-frame basis in response to immediate traffic demands. The chosen multiplex for each frame is indicated with the BA bits in the A-field header. E-type multiplex has priority over U-type multiplex.

The B-field multiplexes are defined in table 6 below.

Table 6

B-field multiplex			E/U	B-field format	Logical channel
D80-field	D32-field	D08-field			
E80	E32	E08	E	Protected	C-MUX
U80a	U32a	U08a	U	Unprotected	I_N or SI_N
U80b	U32b	U08b	U	Protected	

The E-type multiplex always uses the protected B-field format. The possible modes of the E-type multiplex are defined by the C-MUX. See subclause 6.2.2.3.

The U-type multiplex in connection oriented services may use either the protected B-field format or the unprotected B-field format. This choice is defined at connection establishment for all bearers belonging to that connection, and it corresponds to the logical channel required for the chosen service, I_N or I_P . The chosen format is maintained until it is re-negotiated or the connection ends.

6.2.2.3 B-field mode multiplexer (C-MUX)

6.2.2.3.1 Double slot and full slot modes

For double slot and full slot mode all B-subfields are used for control. The following types of information have to be multiplexed:

- higher layer control from the C_F or CL_F logical channel;
- MAC layer connection related signalling;
- higher layer information from the G_F logical channel; and
- MAC layer control to describe the contents of the subfields.

All extended MAC control and G_F segments carried in the B-subfields have a header with a bit indicating if the next subfield in the same databurst contains an extended MAC control or G_F segment, or whether it contains higher layer control.

For double slot operation the modes are given in table 7 below.

Table 7

Subfield	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9
Mode 0	C/O	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 1	C/O	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 2	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 3	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 4	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 5	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 6	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 7	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 8	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	CL _F
Mode 9	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	CL _F
Mode 10	C/O	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F
	C/L	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M	M

For double slot operation the A-field header coding (BA bits) shall distinguish between :

- E-type, mode 0;
- E-type, modes 1 - 9; and
- E-type, mode 10.

For full slot operation the modes given in table 8 below are allowed.

Table 8

subfield	B0	B1	B2	B3
Mode 0 C/O C/L	C _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 1 C/O C/L	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F	C _F
	M	CL _F	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 2 C/O C/L	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F	C _F
	M	M	CL _F	CL _F
Mode 3 C/O C/L	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	C _F
	M	M	M	CL _F
Mode 4 C/O C/L	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F	M/M+G _F
	M	M	M	M

For full slot operation the A-field header coding (BA bits) will distinguish between:

- E-type, mode 0;
- E-type, modes 1 - 3; and
- E-type, mode 4.

For Connection Oriented services (C/O) and when in E mode, the following priority scheme shall be used to fill the four B-subfields:

- 1) **Release:** bearer release messages for this bearer may be transmitted and may be placed in all 4 subfields.
- 2) **Retransmissions of C_F:** for retransmissions of B-fields containing C_F, the same mode shall be used.
- 3) **Bearer quality control In an asymmetric connection:** in an asymmetric connection a "MAC-Mod2-ACKs" message (subclause 7.3.5.4) may be placed in the subfield B0.
- 4) **Other MAC layer control (excluding MAC_Dummy):** this may be placed in the remaining subfields. The subfields are used in the following order of preference, B0, B1, B2, B3.
- 5) **New C_F data:** any remaining subfields may be used for C_F data. The subfields are used in the following order of preference, B3, B2, B1, B0. However, the sequence of data through the MC SAP shall be B0, B1, B2, B3.
- 6) **New G_F data:** this may be placed in any subfield that has not yet been used. The order of usage of subfields and the sequence of data segments through the MC SAP is not specified.

7) **MAC_dummy**: this shall be used to fill any subfields still empty.
In connectionless services new CL_F segments have priority over MAC control.

6.2.2.3.2 Half slot modes

For half slot mode only one B-subfield is available for control. The following types of information have to be multiplexed:

- higher layer control from the C_F or CL_F logical channel; and
- MAC layer connection related signalling.

NOTE: As multi-bearer half slots are prohibited, asymmetric connections are not possible, and so no G_F-channel is used.

Only one E-type mapping exists.

The A-field header coding will distinguish between:

- E-type, mode 0; and
- E-type, mode 1.

Mode 0: the E-type databurst carries C_F or CL_F control;

Mode 1: the E-type databurst carries extended MAC control.

When in E mode, the following priority scheme shall be used to fill the B0 subfield in connection oriented services:

- 1) **Release**: bearer release messages for this bearer may be placed in B0.
- 2) **Retransmissions of CF**.
- 3) **MAC layer control** (excluding MAC_dummy).
- 4) **New C_F data**.
- 5) **MAC_dummy**: U-type information should normally be sent in preference to this.

For connectionless services, CL_F data has priority over MAC control.

6.2.3 Encryption

Encryption is a privacy mechanism which may be provided to encrypt all C, I, and G_F-channel data of a connection oriented call. The key stream generator KSG in the MBC produces the encryption data which are XOR'd with the original data in the TBC's encryption entity.

NOTE 1: When enabled also M-channel data transmitted in the B-field is encrypted.

NOTE 2: Error control (R-CRC and X-CRC bits) are never encrypted.

Before activating the encryption mechanism for the first time, the DLC provides the MBC with a secret encryption key. This key is loaded into the key stream generator KSG.

Enabling and disabling of encryption is ordered by the DLC. The MBC is responsible for switching between encryption mode and clear mode. The actual encryption mode of the connection controlled by the MBC shall be the same for all established bearers of this connection.

This part of the DECT CI standard defines:

- the messages required for switching the encryption mode of a connection;
- the primitives exchanged between MAC and DLC ; and
- the instant in time to enable encryption during bearer setup provided that the new bearer belongs to a connection in encryption mode.

The following items related to the MAC layer are defined in ETS 300 175-7 [7]:

- the algorithm used by the KSG to generate the encryption data;
- the MAC procedure to switch a connection between encryption and clear mode ; and
- the mapping of the encryption stream onto the data fields.

6.2.4 Scrambling

A scrambler is used to avoid long "0" or "1" sequences occurring several times due to unaltered data or retransmission protocols. The TBC generates pseudo-random sequences which change for consecutive TDMA frames and combines the original B-field data with these sequences.

Scrambling is applied to all B-field data except the X-field. These are the first 800 bits numbered from b_0 to b_{799} for double slot, the first 320 bits numbered from b_0 to b_{319} for full slot, and the first $80 + j$ bits numbered from b_0 to $b_{79 + j}$ for half slot.

The scrambled data is a combination of the original data and a scrambling sequence:

$$b_i = b_i \text{ XOR } s_{fi}$$

where i for double slot, i for full slot, and i for half slot. XOR describes the "exclusive-OR" function and s_{fi} denotes bit "i" of the scrambling sequence s_f .

Eight scrambling sequences exist, s_0 to s_7 . The number "f" of the scrambling sequence s_f actually used, depends upon the TDMA frame number within the multi-frame structure:

$$f = (\text{TDMA frame number}) \text{ MOD } 8.$$

The scrambling sequences are based on a pseudo random sequence of length 31. This sequence is the maximal length sequence generated by the five stage shift register shown in figure 24.

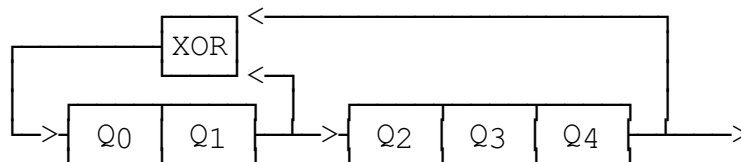


Figure 24

For the initial state of the shift register, Q_3 and Q_4 are set to 1. Between the settings of Q_0 , Q_1 , Q_2 and the sequence number f of the scrambling sequence s_f the following relation shall hold:

$$f = Q_2 * 4 + Q_1 * 2 + Q_0$$

The scrambling sequence corresponds to the shift register output after passing an inversion mechanism.

The output of the shift register is the actual state of Q_4 . Therefore, the first output of the shift register used to build the scrambling bit s_{f0} corresponds to the initial state of Q_4 .

The inversion mechanism has two modes, the shift register output passes through non inverted or inverted. The inversion mechanism toggles from one mode to the other mode when the shift register switches to the state following the all one state. The toggle mode is preset to invert the first output of the shift register.

Scrambling of the B-field is mandatory and shall always be applied, even when encryption is active.

6.2.5 Error control

The MAC layer provides error control for all logical channels, using a combination of two Cyclic Redundancy Codes (CRC):

- R-CRC; a 16-bit CRC;
- X-CRC; a 4-bit CRC.

6.2.5.1 R-CRC overview

The R-CRC is used to provide the main MAC layer error control. The MAC layer calculates 16 redundancy bits over several fixed length data blocks:

- all A-fields;
- all B-subfields in protected format.

In each case, the redundancy bits are appended to the data blocks and allow a redundancy check in the receiver. In the different mapping schemes given in subclause 6.2.1.3, the fields for transmitting the CRC bits are denoted as R_A and $R_{B0} \dots R_{B3}$. The procedure for calculating the 16 CRC bits and the rule to check a received data block with its CRC bits is defined in subclause 6.2.5.2.

Data transmitted from all logical channels except the I_N -channel is located in data blocks to which these 16 CRC bits are appended (see mapping schemes in subclause 6.2.1). This allows the receiver to detect errors in all N, Q, B_S , C_S , C_F , CL_S , CL_F , I_P , G_F and M-channel data.

For N, Q, B_S , CL_S , CL_F , M and G_F -channel data and I_P -channel data (when in the $I_P_error_detection$ service) only error detection capability is provided. No MAC layer retransmission scheme is applied for this data.

For C_S and C_F -channel data, a MAC layer retransmission scheme is defined in order to correct transmission errors. A numbering scheme allows successive data transmissions on these channels to be distinguished. This allows repetition (retransmission) of the same data several times until the transmitter gets an acknowledgement from the data receiver or the transmitter stops retransmitting the data. The retransmission process is described in subclause 10.8.

For the $I_P_error_correction$ service the MAC layer provides a retransmission scheme for I_P data. Retransmissions are done for each bearer independently. The receiving side requests that the sending side transmits the last packet again until no errors are detected or, until a timer expires. When the timer expires that packet is discarded. Data passed to the upper layer is almost free from errors. This error correction scheme is called the MOD-2 retransmission scheme for I_P data, and described in subclause 10.8.2.

6.2.5.2 R-CRC generation and checking

All $m = 64$ bit A-fields and all $m = 80$ bit B-subfields (see subclause 6.2.1.3) contain n data bits and 16 check bits. Therefore the data block length n is $m - 16$. The 16 check bits are appended to the n data bits. For encoding, the n data bits shall be considered to be the coefficients of a polynomial having terms from x^{m-1} down to x^1 . If the m bits of one protected field are transmitted in ascending order (r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{m-1})

the polynomial is built as:

$$r_0 x^{m-1} + r_1 x^{m-2} + \dots + r_{m-1} x^1$$

This polynomial is divided by the generating polynomial:

$$g(x) = x^{16} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^3 + 1 = 202'611 \text{ (oct)}$$

The 16 check bits shall be the coefficients of the terms from x^{15} to x^0 in the remainder polynomial, found at the completion of the division. The remainder polynomial has the form:

$$r_n x^{15} + r_{n+1} x^{14} + \dots + r_{m-1} x^0$$

The last check bit (coefficient r_{m-1} of the x^0 term in the remainder polynomial) is finally inverted.

In the resulting $m = n+16$ bit codeword, the leading n bits correspond to the original data bits.

For error detecting it has to be ensured that the received m -bit codeword is a valid codeword. Again the m bits can be considered to be the coefficients of a polynomial having terms from x^{m-1} down to x^0 . If the m bits of one protected field are received in ascending order (r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{m-1}) the polynomial is built as

$$r_0 x^{m-1} + r_1 x^{m-2} + \dots + r_{m-1} x^0$$

After inverting the coefficient r_{m-1} of the x^0 term the generator polynomial $g(x)$ divides all valid codewords.

6.2.5.3 X-CRC overview

For error control of B-field data a limited error detection scheme is always applied, even for unprotected B-field formats. This is the only protection that is applied to the I_N logical channel. The MAC layer calculates 4 redundancy bits from selected B-field data bits. These four bits are transmitted in the X-field. The X-field occupies the last four bits of the B-field in all multiplexes. The X-field allows a redundancy check in the receiver. The procedure for calculating and checking the X-field bits is defined in subclause 6.2.5.4.

6.2.5.4 X-CRC generation and checking

The X-field consists of the last four bits of the B-field. It is used to test channel quality and to detect sliding collisions. Therefore, a CRC check is done over a selected number of scrambled B-field bits.

The overall number of test bits is m . These m bits include the four X-field bits. The number m is different for half slot, for full slot, and for double slot.

- $m = 84 + j$ for half slot;
- $m = 84$ for full slot;
- $m = 164$ for double slot.

With a test bit assignment of $(r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{m-1})$ the mapping of the test bits onto the B-field is the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_i &= b_i && ; && 0 \leq i \leq 83 + j && \text{for half slot,} \\
 r_i &= b_i + 48 && ; && 0 \leq i \leq 15 \\
 & && b_i + 96 && ; && 16 \leq i \leq 31 \\
 & && b_i + 144 && ; && 32 \leq i \leq 47 \\
 & && b_i + 192 && ; && 48 \leq i \leq 63 \\
 & && b_i + 240 && ; && 64 \leq i \leq 83 && \text{for full slot,} \\
 r_i &= b_i + 64 && ; && 0 \leq i \leq 15 \\
 & && b_i + 128 && ; && 16 \leq i \leq 31 \\
 & && b_i + 192 && ; && 32 \leq i \leq 47 \\
 & && b_i + 256 && ; && 48 \leq i \leq 63 \\
 & && b_i + 320 && ; && 64 \leq i \leq 79 \\
 & && b_i + 384 && ; && 80 \leq i \leq 95 \\
 & && b_i + 448 && ; && 96 \leq i \leq 111 \\
 & && b_i + 512 && ; && 112 \leq i \leq 127 \\
 & && b_i + 576 && ; && 128 \leq i \leq 143 \\
 & && b_i + 640 && ; && 144 \leq i \leq 163 && \text{for double slot.}
 \end{aligned}$$

The first $m-4$ bits $(r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{m-5})$ are considered as the coefficients of the polynomial

$$r_0 x^{m-1} + r_1 x^{m-2} + \dots + r_{m-5} x^4$$

This polynomial shall be divided by the polynomial:

$$x^4 + 1 = 21 \text{ (oct)}$$

The remainder polynomial has the form:

$$r_{m-4} x^3 + r_{m-3} x^2 + r_{m-2} x + r_{m-1}$$

where the coefficients $r_{m-4} \dots r_{m-1}$ shall represent the last four test bits and shall be transmitted in the X-field.

For the X-field check, the received test pattern $(r_0, r_1, \dots, r_{m-1})$ builds the polynomial:

$$r_0 x^{m-1} + r_1 x^{m-2} + \dots + r_{m-1} x^0$$

The polynomial $x^4 + 1 = 21 \text{ (oct)}$ divides all valid test patterns.

6.2.6 Broadcast controller

The broadcast controller in the TBC or CBC or DBC adds RFP specific information to data from the BMC. Some examples for RFP specific information are: the RPN number (refer to subclause 7.2.2), the number of transceivers within the RFP, description of slot position and frequency of the radio channel in use (see subclause 7.2.3.2), or blind slot information (refer to subclause 7.2.4.3.3).

7 Medium access layer messages

General remarks:

- 1) When not specially defined, all numbers in A-field or B-field messages are coded with the natural binary value and are arranged such that the Most Significant Bit (MSB) is transmitted first and the Least Significant Bit (LSB) is transmitted last.

Example: A five bit number with a value of 12 (decimal) = 01100 (binary) which is transmitted in the bits a_{13} to a_{17} or in the bits bn_{13} to bn_{17} is coded as in figure 25 below:

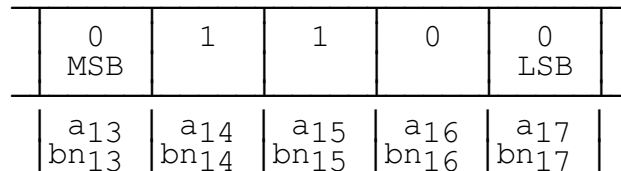


Figure 25

- 2) "Escape" codes are for proprietary use. The main escape is provided in the tail identification (see subclause 7.1.2). Secondary escapes are also provided for proprietary extensions to the messages. These secondary codes shall not be used to replace functions that can be equally provided using DECT standard functions.
- 3) "Reserved" codes are for future DECT CI expansions. These codes shall not be used. These codes may be specified in future revisions of this ETS.
- 4) Messages not implemented shall be ignored.

7.1 Header field

7.1.1 Overview/formatting

The header field, H, occupies bits a_0 to a_7 of the A-field. See figure 26 below.

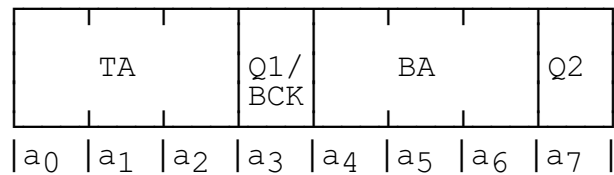


Figure 26

7.1.2 Tail identification, TA, bits a_0 to a_2

These bits describe the contents of the 40 bits that follow the header field. See table 9 below.

Table 9

a_0	a_1	a_2	Tail Contents	Restrictions
0	0	0	C_T data packet number 0	
0	0	1	C_T data packet number 1	
0	1	0	identities information (N_T) on connectionless bearer	RFP only
0	1	1	identities information (N_T)	
1	0	0	multiframe synchronisation and system information (Q_T)	RFP only
1	0	1	escape	
1	1	0	MAC layer control (M_T)	
1	1	1	paging tail (P_T)	RFP only
1	1	1	first PP transmission (M_T)	PP only
"RFP only" means: RFP transmissions only "PP only" means: PP transmissions only				

NOTE 1: Rigorous testing of all possible reserved tails is not intended. A manufacturer's declaration is probably appropriate.

NOTE 2: When the escape code is used it shall appear in every header and no other TA code shall be used. The escape code indicates the use of proprietary protocols and no compatibility with the standard protocol can be assumed (see ETS 300 175-1 [1]).

7.1.3 The "Q1 / BCK" bit, bit a_3

The bit a_3 has only a defined meaning for duplex traffic bearers, i.e. duplex bearers in connection oriented services. For all other bearers and services this bit is set to "0".

For duplex bearers of a MAC layer $Ip_error_correction$ service (connection oriented service) this bit is the "BCK" bit and is used for Ip -channel flow control. Its value is defined by the procedures given in subclause 10.8.2.

For duplex bearers of all the other connection oriented MAC layer services, this bit is the "Q1" bit and used for bearer quality control. Its value is defined by the procedures given in subclause 10.8.1.3.

7.1.4 B-field identification, BA, bits a₄ to a₆

These bits describe the contents of the B-field that follows the A-field. See table 10 below.

Table 10

a ₄ , a ₅ , a ₆	B-Field Contents
0 0 0	U-type, I _N , SI _N or I _P packet number 0
0 0 1	U-type, I _P error detect or I _P packet number 1
0 1 0	E-type, all C _F or CL _F , packet number 0
0 1 1	E-type, all C _F , packet number 1
1 0 0	E-type, not all C _F or CL _F ; C _F packet number 0
1 0 1	E-type, not all C _F ; C _F packet number 1
1 1 0	E-type, all MAC control (unnumbered)
1 1 1	no B-field

NOTE: Testing of this H-field with all possible T- and B-fields is not intended. A manufacturer's declaration is appropriate.

7.1.5 The "Q2" bit, bit a₇

The bit a₇ has only a defined meaning for duplex traffic bearers, i.e. duplex bearers in connection oriented services. For all other bearers and services this bit is set to "0".

For duplex bearers of connection oriented MAC layer services, this bit is the "Q2" bit and used for bearer quality control and C-channel flow control. Its value is defined by the procedures given in subclause 10.8.1.3 for I_N and I_P_error_detection services and in subclause 10.8.2.4 for I_P_error_correction services.

7.2 Messages in the tail field

7.2.1 Overview

Several different messages may be multiplexed into the tail field, according to the T-MUX algorithm defined in subclause 6.2.2.1. The contents of the tail field are defined for each frame by the tail identification bits defined in subclause 7.1.2.

Each tail message has a fixed length of 40 bits. In the following descriptions the mapping of the message into the A-field is shown. The first bit of the message always appears in bit position a₈ as shown in figure 27 below:

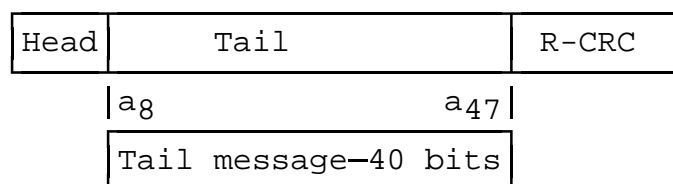


Figure 27

The following tail messages are defined:

- N-channel messages (subclause 7.2.2);
- Q-channel messages (subclause 7.2.3);
- P-channel messages (subclause 7.2.4);
- M-channel messages (subclause 7.2.5).

7.2.2 Identities information (N_T)

The management entity in the RFP supplies the MAC layer with the primary access rights identifier, an SDU of either 32 bits or 37 bits passed through the ME SAP. The RFP adds its radio fixed part number (8 or 3 bit) RPN to this SDU so that the RPN forms the least significant bits of the resulting 40 bit field. The complete 40 bit message forms the radio fixed part identity (see ETS 300 175-6 [6]), and this is the only message that appears in N_T type tails sent by the RFP. The least significant bit of RFPI is placed in bit position a₄₇.

N_T type tails sent by a PT contain the RFPI of that RFP with which it is maintaining the bearer.

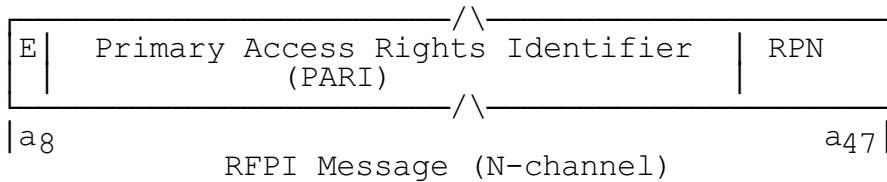


Figure 28

7.2.3 System information and multiframe marker (Q_T)

7.2.3.1 General

The multiframe marker is transmitted once every 16 frames. This marker is combined with the tail code for system information (Q). Q-channel information is therefore only transmitted by RFPs once every multiframe.

The basic format of the Q-field is to have a 4 bit header (the Q_H field) followed by a 36 bit information field. See figure 29 below.

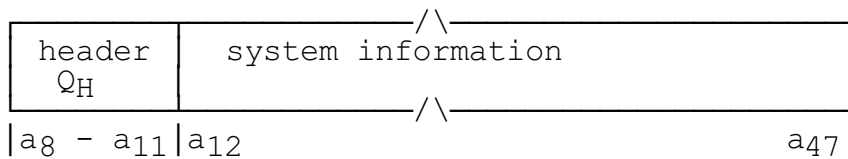


Figure 29

The Q_H field is used to identify 16 different system information fields. Any one of these fields can be transmitted in each multiframe. Some of these fields need never be transmitted. PTs are required to understand some of these fields. There is a maximum time interval between transmissions of mandatory fields. The exact sequencing of different Q fields by an RFP is not defined.

Table 11

Q _H	SYSTEM INFORMATION	MAN	FREQ
000X	static system info	Yes	8
0010	extended RF carriers	NOTE 1	8
0011	fixed part capabilities	Yes	8
0100	extended fixed part capabilities	NOTE 2	8
0101	SARI list contents	No	4
0110	multi-frame number	NOTE 3	8
0111	escape	No	-
1000	}		
to	} Reserved		
1111	}		

MAN = Mandatory transmission (Yes/No)
 FREQ = Maximum repeat interval in multiframes, if implemented

NOTE 1: If an extended frequency allocation is used this message shall be transmitted in the multiframe following every transmission of the static system information.

NOTE 2: If extended fixed part capabilities information is available available this message shall be transmitted in the multiframe following every transmission of the fixed part capabilities information.

NOTE 3: If an RFP implements encryption then this message shall be transmitted at least once every 8 multiframes.

7.2.3.2 Static system information

7.2.3.2.1 General, Q_H = 0, 1 (hex)

This message shall be sent at least once every 8 multiframes. See figure 30 below.

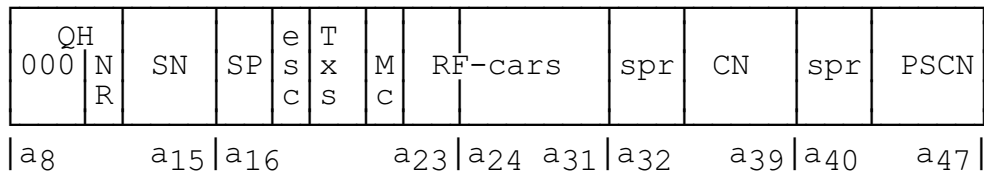


Figure 30

7.2.3.2.2 Q_H and Normal-Reverse (NR)

NR defines whether the RFP is transmitting in its normal half frame, or whether this is the reversed half of an asymmetric connection. See table 12 below.

Table 12

bit a ₁₁	meaning
0	"normal" RFP transmit half frame
1	"normal"PP transmit half frame

NOTE: Q_H and NR are combined to allow easier decoding.

7.2.3.2.3 Slot Number (SN)

This defines the number of the slot pair in which this transmission begins. See table 13 below.

Table 13

bits a12, a13, a14, a15				meaning
0	0	0	0	slot pair
0	0	0	1	slot pair
0	0	1	0	slot pair
0	0	1	1	slot pair
0	1	0	0	slot pair
0	1	0	1	slot pair
0	1	1	0	slot pair
0	1	1	1	slot pair
1	0	0	0	slot pair
1	0	0	1	slot pair
1	0	1	0	slot pair
1	0	1	1	slot pair
1	1	0	0	}
		to		} reserved
1	1	1	1	}

7.2.3.2.4 Start Position (SP)

Start position defines the bit in the full slot pair where transmission of the first bit of the S-field starts. See table 14 below.

Table 14

bits a16, a17		Meaning
0	0	S-field starts at bit f0
0	1	reserved for future use
1	0	S-field starts at bit f240
1	1	reserved for future use
NOTE 1: f240 is a "half slot".		
NOTE 2: Only full slots starting at bit f0 are currently fully defined.		

7.2.3.2.5 ESCape bit (ESC)

When set to "1", indicates that the "escape" Q_T message will be broadcast (refer to subclause 7.2.3.8). See table 15 below.

Table 15

bit a18	Meaning
0	no "QT Escape" is broadcast
1	the "QT Escape" is broadcast

7.2.3.2.6 Number of transceivers

This gives the number of transceivers in the RFP. See table 16 below.

Table 16

bits a19, a20		Meaning
0	0	RFP has 1 transceiver
0	1	RFP has 2 transceivers
1	0	RFP has 3 transceivers
1	1	RFP has 4 or more transceivers

7.2.3.2.7 Extended RF carrier information available

If the "extended RF carrier information" Q message is transmitted by this RFP, this bit shall be set. The "extended RF carrier information" message shall be transmitted in the multi-frame following this "static system information" message. See table 17 below.

Table 17

bit a21	Meaning
0	no "extended RF carrier information" message;
1	"extended RF carrier information" message shall be transmitted in the next multiframe.

7.2.3.2.8 RF carriers available (RF-cars)

10 bits are used to tell the PT which of the 10 carriers are available at this RFP.

It is required that all RFPs in the same DECT FP shall have exactly the same RF carriers available.

For bit a_x , $22 \mu \times \mu 31$:

if $a_x = 0$, then RF carrier (x-22) is not available at this RFP;

else $a_x = 1$ and RF carrier (x-22) is available at this RFP.

a_x shall be set to 1 except where local regulatory conditions determine local RF carrier availability.

7.2.3.2.9 SPaRe bits (SPR)

Until their use is defined, these bits shall not be used. They shall be set equal to "0". See table 18 below.

Table 18

bit	Value
a32	0
a33	0

7.2.3.2.10 Carrier number

This defines the number of the RF carrier of this transmission. See table 19 below.

Table 19

bits						Meaning
a34,	a35,	a36,	a37,	a38,	a39	
0	0	0	0	0	0	RF Carrier 0
0	0	0	0	0	1	RF Carrier 1
0	0	0	0	1	0	RF Carrier 2
.....etc.....						
0	0	1	0	0	1	RF Carrier 9
0	0	1	0	1	0	reserved
.....etc.....						
0	0	1	1	1	1	reserved
.....to.....						
1	1	1	1	1	1	reserved.

7.2.3.2.11 SPaRe bits (SPR)

Until their use is defined, these bits shall not be used. They shall be set equal to "0". See table 20 below.

Table 20

bit	Value
a40	0
a41	0

7.2.3.2.12 Primary receiver Scan Carrier Number (PSCN)

The PSCN defines the RF carrier on which one receiver will be listening on the next frame when only one receiver is idle. See table 21 below.

Table 21

bits						Meaning
a42,	a43,	a44,	a45,	a46,	a47	
0	0	0	0	0	0	primary scan next on RF Carr.0
0	0	0	0	0	1	primary scan next on RF Carr.1
0	0	0	0	1	0	primary scan next on RF Carr.2
.....etc.....						
0	0	1	0	0	1	primary scan next on RF Carr.9
0	0	1	0	1	0	reserved
.....etc.....						
0	0	1	1	1	1	reserved
.....to.....						
1	1	1	1	1	1	reserved.

NOTE: In normal systems the value in the PSCN field may change with each transmission (as PSCN has a 10 frame cycle and Q messages have a 16 frame cycle).

7.2.3.3 Extended RF carrier information

7.2.3.3.1 General, $Q_H = 2$ (hex)

The transmission of this message is mandatory if a DECT FT is able to transmit on a RF carrier that is not in the set it is also able to transmit on a RF carrier that is in the set .

All PTs shall be able to understand bits a_8 to a_{11} and bits a_{42} to a_{47} inclusive, of this message. See figure 31 below.

Q_H 0 0 1 0		reserved for future standardisation			0 0 spr		number of RF Carriers	
a_8	a_{11}	a_{12}	a_{39}	a_{41}	a_{42}	a_{47}		

Figure 31

7.2.3.3.2 Extended RF carriers

Bits a_{42} to a_{47} give the number of RF carriers that the RFP scans in a regular sequence. Bit a_{47} is the least significant bit.

NOTE: The coding of bits a_{12} to a_{39} , inclusive, is left for future standardisation when additional frequencies are allocated.

7.2.3.4 Fixed part capabilities

7.2.3.4.1 General, $Q_H = 3$ (hex)

The fixed part shall transmit this message at least once every 8 multiframes.

A PT shall understand the bits in this message that relate to the service that the PT requires; e.g. if the PT needs an RFP with frequency control, the PT shall be able to understand the bit that says whether the RFP implements frequency control. See figure 32 below.

Q_H 0011		capabilities available information					
a_8	a_{11}	a_{12}				a_{47}	

Figure 32

7.2.3.4.2 Standard capabilities

0011		Physical and MAC layer capabilities			Higher layer information		
a_8	a_{11}	a_{12}	a_{31}	a_{32}	a_{47}		

Figure 33

Physical and MAC layer capabilities available:

I

f a capability is available: then bit a_x shall be set to 1;
 else (capability is not available) the bit a_x shall be set to 0.

Reserved bits shall be set to 0.

Table 22

bit number	Capability
a12	extended FP Info ($Q_H = 4$)
a13	reserved
a14	reserved
a15	double slot
a16	half slot
a17	full slot
a18	frequency control
a19	page repetition
a20	C/O setup on dummy allowed
a21	C/L uplink
a22	C/L downlink
a23	basic A-field set up
a24	advanced A-field set up
a25	B-field set up
a26	CF messages
a27	IN minimum delay
a28	IN normal delay
a29	IP error detection
a30	IP error correction
a31	multibearer connections
<p>NOTE 1: Bit a19 indicates whether or not Idle Locked PPs may enter the low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode (see subclause 11.3.3.1).</p> <p>NOTE 2: The bits a21 and a22 indicate only the capabilities of the FT to provide connectionless services in the uplink or downlink direction. They do not indicate if these services are active when the message is transmitted.</p>	

Higher layer information:

The management entity in the fixed part supplies the MAC layer with a 16 bit SDU via the ME SAP. At the PT the MAC layer passes the 16 bits out through the ME SAP to the management entity.

For the setting of the higher layer information bits refer to Annex F of ETS 300 175-5 [5].

7.2.3.5 Extended fixed part capabilities

7.2.3.5.1 General, $Q_H = 4$ (hex)

This message is reserved for future standardisation. See figure 34 below.

If this message is transmitted, it shall be sent at least once in every 8 multiframe.

NOTE: Bit a₁₂ of the standard capabilities message (see subclause 7.2.3.4) indicates whether or not this message is broadcast.

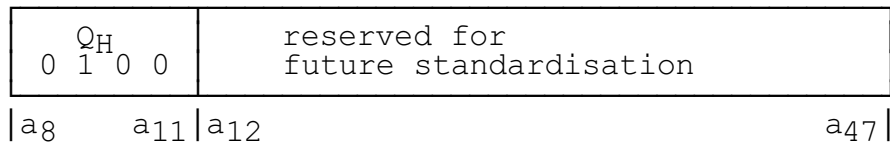


Figure 34

7.2.3.5.2 Extended capabilities

The coding of bits a₁₂ to a₄₇ is left for future standardisation when additional capabilities are specified.

7.2.3.6 Secondary access rights identities

7.2.3.6.1 General, Q_H = 5 (hex)

The transmission of this message is optional, subject to the existence of one or more valid SARIs. See figure 35 below.

If this message is transmitted, it shall be transmitted at least once every 4 multiframes.



Figure 35

7.2.3.6.2 SARI message

The management entity in the fixed part supplies the MAC layer with a 36 bit SDU via the ME SAP. At the PT the MAC layer passes the 36 bits out through the ME SAP to the management entity. See ETS 300 175-6 [6].

7.2.3.7 Multiframe number

7.2.3.7.1 General, Q_H = 6 (hex)

Every RFP that supports encryption shall transmit this message at least once every 8 multiframes.

All PTs that support encryption shall understand this message. See figure 36 below.

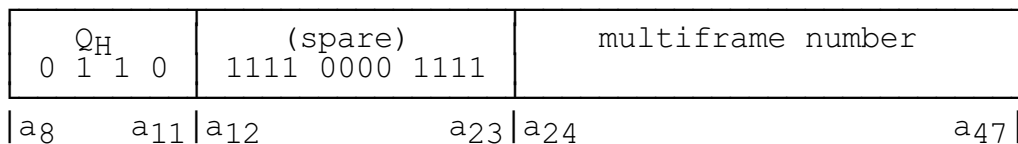


Figure 36

7.2.3.7.2 Multiframe number

This is the number of the multiframe, modulo 2²⁴. The least significant bit of the multiframe number is placed in bit position a₄₇.

The multiframe number shall be the same across the whole of a DECT FT.

7.2.3.8 Escape

7.2.3.8.1 General, $Q_H = 7$ (hex)

The transmission of this message is optional.

Any DECT RFP may transmit an escape message. See figure 37 below.

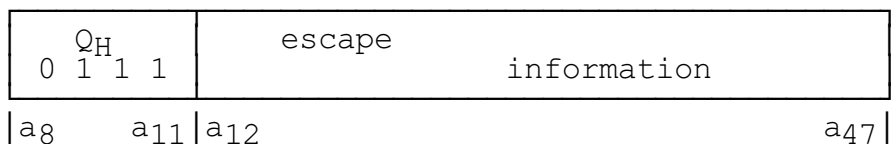


Figure 37

7.2.3.8.2 Escape information

The content of the escape information field (a_{12} to a_{47}) is not specified. This message is provided for application specific use.

7.2.4 Paging Tail (P_T)

7.2.4.1 General format

7.2.4.1.1 P_T format for full and long page messages

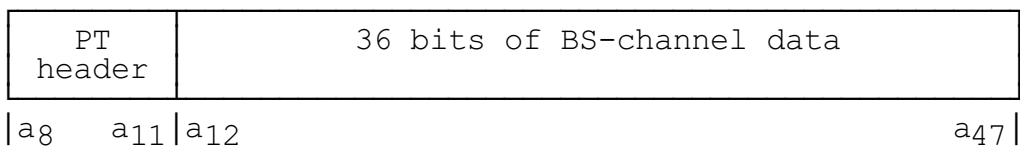


Figure 38

7.2.4.1.2 P_T format for short page messages

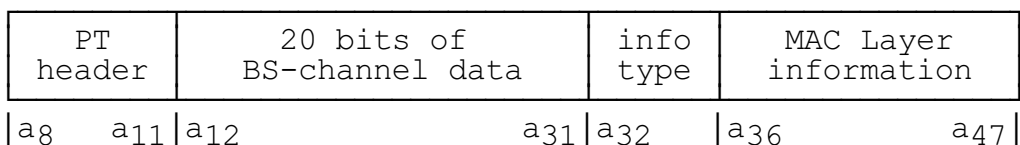


Figure 39

7.2.4.1.3 P_T format for zero length page messages

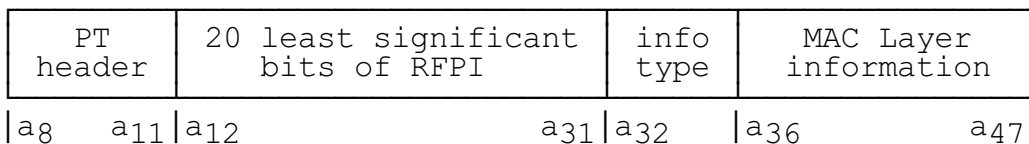


Figure 40

7.2.4.2 P_T header format

7.2.4.2.1 General format

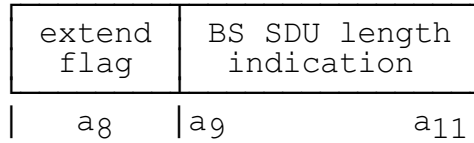


Figure 41

7.2.4.2.2 Bit a₈ is the extend flag

a₈ = 0: the next occurrence of a normal page shall be in a frame 0.

a₈ = 1: another page message shall start in the next frame in this multiframe that is permitted to contain a P_T type tail.

7.2.4.2.3 B_S SDU length indication

Table 23

a ₉	a ₁₀	a ₁₁	Length indication
0	0	0	zero length page
0	0	1	short page
0	1	0	full page
0	1	1	reserved
1	0	0	not the last 36 bits of a long page
1	0	1	the first 36 bits of a long page
1	1	0	the last 36 bits of a long page
1	1	1	all of a long page (first and last)

7.2.4.3 MAC layer information for P_T

7.2.4.3.1 Information type

Table 24

a ₃₂	a ₃₃	a ₃₄	a ₃₅	Information type
0	0	0	0	fill bits
0	0	0	1	blind full slot
0	0	1	0	other bearer
0	0	1	1	recommended other bearer
0	1	0	0	good RFP bearer
0	1	0	1	dummy or C/L bearer position
0	1	1	0	RFP identity
0	1	1	1	escape
1	0	0	0	dummy or C/L bearer marker
1	0	0	1	bearer handover information
1	0	1	0	rfp status
1	0	1	1	}
		to		} reserved
1	1	1	1	}

7.2.4.3.2 Fill bits

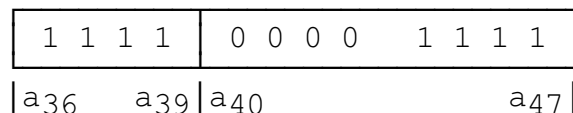


Figure 42

7.2.4.3.3 Blind full slot information

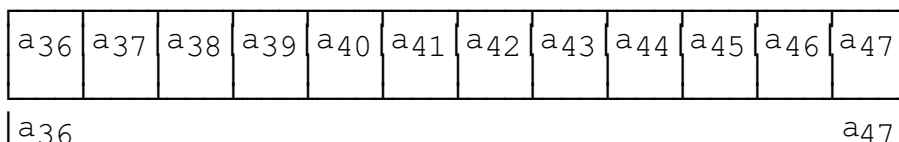


Figure 43

For a_x with 36 μ x μ 47:

if a_x = 1: then full slot pair is not "blind", i.e. available;
else (a_x = 0) full slot pair is "blind", i.e. not available.

7.2.4.3.4 Bearer description

These codings are used to provide bearer information and consist of the following information types:

- other bearer;
- recommended other bearer;
- good RFP bearer; and
- dummy or connectionless bearer position.

The meaning of the messages are, however, different:

- "other bearer" means that this RFP has another bearer on the physical channel pair that is described in the remaining 12 bits;
- "recommended other bearer" means that this RFP has another bearer on the physical channel pair that is described in the remaining 12 bits. This message shall not be sent unless the bearer that it is sent on will be released in less than or equal to 4 multiframes;
- "good RFP bearer" means that this RFP thinks that the physical channel pair described in the remaining 12 bits is a good bearer for the PT to use to communicate with that RFP;
- "dummy or C/L bearer position" describes a new dummy bearer position and/or marks the position of the bearer which is used for the downlink connectionless service.

NOTE: The "fixed part capabilities message" (subclause 7.2.3.4) defines whether it is prohibited to setup a traffic bearer on this pair of physical channels.

Table 25

Info type	Parameter	Meaning
0000	0000 1111	no bearer H/O to other RFPs no intracell bearer H/O
0001	0000 1111	no bearer H/O to other RFPs intracell bearer H/O supported
0010	0000 1111	bearer H/O supported in whole internal handover area (see Part 6)
0011	bit mask	bearer H/O supported to all RFPs with an RFPI that differs only in the masked bits, see below
0100 to 1111	reserved	reserved
Info type "0011": Bit mask		

The transmitted bit mask serves to test the RFPI of any (new) RFP to determine if a bearer handover is possible to that new RFP. Bearer handover to this RFP is only possible if the RFPI of that new RFP only differs from the old (current) RFPI in one or more of the bit positions identified by a "0" in the bit mask. In all cases, the bit mask shall be aligned to the last octet of the RFPI.

NOTE: The RFPI is obtained from the NT message, see subclause 7.2.2.

Example: A bit mask "1111 1000" will allow a bearer handover to all RFPs with an RFPI that differs only in the last three bits from the RFPI of the current RFP.

Single cell fixed systems (i.e. only one RFP) shall not broadcast other bearer handover information than info type "0000" and info type "0001".

7.2.4.3.9 RFP status

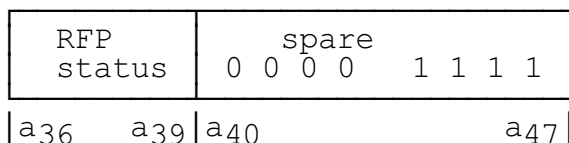


Figure 48

Table 26

RFP status	Meaning
xxx0	RFP clear
xxx1	RFP busy
xx0x	system clear
xx1x	system busy
00xx to 11xx	reserved

7.2.5 MAC control (M_T)

7.2.5.1 General format and contents

Two different combinations of TA bits are used to indicate the presence of MAC layer control information in the tail. The "first PT transmission" code is used only in the first transmission from a PT. This is intended to aid RFPs in busy systems to identify bearer set up requests amongst a background of ongoing connections.

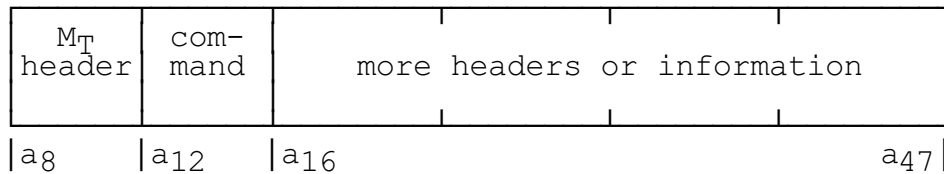


Figure 49

M_T messages (see figure 49 above) are sent as 40 bit packets in the tail of the A-field. The first 4 bit header provides a coarse division of messages and for most message types a second header, completing the first octet, provides a finer division of the messages.

Table 27

M _T header	Message type
0000	basic connection control
0001	advanced connection control
0010	MAC layer test messages
0011	quality control
0100	broadcast and connectionless services
0101	encryption control
0110	Tail for use with the first transmission of a B-field "bearer request" message when not also sending an A-field "bearer request"
0111	escape
1000	TARI message
1001	}
to	} reserved
1111	}

7.2.5.2 Basic connection control

7.2.5.2.1 General

The basic connection control messages shall only be used by PPs and RFPs that are attempting to establish a single duplex bearer voice connection with a B-field of 324 bits.

7.2.5.2.2 Format for most messages

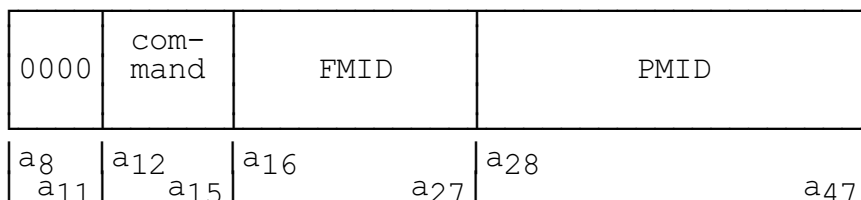


Figure 50

NOTE: For definitions of FMID, PMID, see subclause 11.7.

Table 28

Command	Basic connection control messages
0000	access_request **
0001	bearer_handover_request **
0010	connection_handover_request **
0011	unconfirmed_access_request **
0100	bearer_confirm
0101	wait (format see subclause 7.2.5.2.3)
0110	} to } reserved
1110	}
1111	release
** indicates messages that use the "first PT transmission" code. The other messages use the normal M _T code.	

NOTE 1: This release message shall only refer to the bearer that it is transmitted on.

NOTE 2: An RFP that receives an UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST message does not return a BEARER_CONFIRM. It may listen to following frames to receive MAC attributes messages or data.

NOTE 3: The use of the UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST message is intended here for achieving handover by changing base stations but remaining on the same physical channel. The use of this message in basic cases is still uncertain.

NOTE 4: Fast bearer set up requests are not allowed in basic A-field setups.

7.2.5.2.3 WAIT

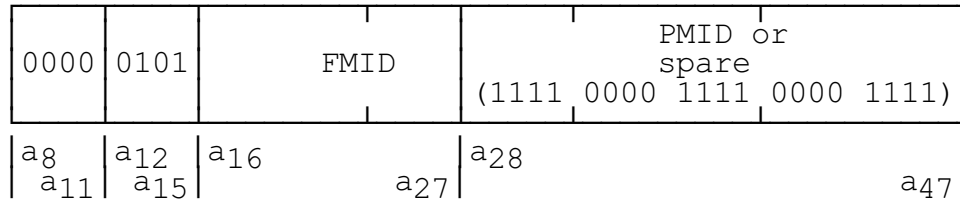


Figure 51

NOTE: The procedure does not make reference to the values of a₁₆ to a₄₇. It is not intended that the contents of this field be included in any mandatory tests.

7.2.5.3 Advanced connection control

7.2.5.3.1 General

Table 29

Command	Advanced connection control messages	
0000	ACCESS REQUEST	**
0001	bearer_handover_request	**
0010	connection_handover_request	**
0011	unconfirmed_access_request	**
0100	bearer_confirm	
0101	wait (contains FMID)	
0110	attributes_T.request	
0111	attributes_T.confirm	
1000	bandwidth_T.request	
1001	bandwidth_T.confirm	
1010	channel_list	
1011	unconfirmed_dummy	**
1100	unconfirmed_handover	**
1101	reserved	
1110	reserved	
1111	release	

** indicates messages that, if transmitted by a PT, use the first PT transmission" code.

These messages allow a complicated connection to be established using MT messages. The connection set up time is expected to be much longer than if MAC control messages are sent in the B-field.

7.2.5.3.2 ACCESS_REQUEST

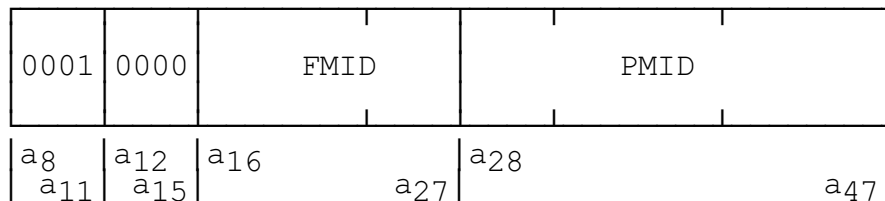


Figure 52

7.2.5.3.3 BEARER_HANDBOVER_REQUEST

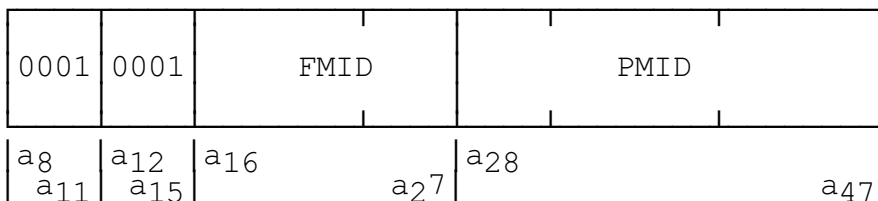


Figure 53

7.2.5.3.4 CONNECTION_HANDBOVER_REQUEST

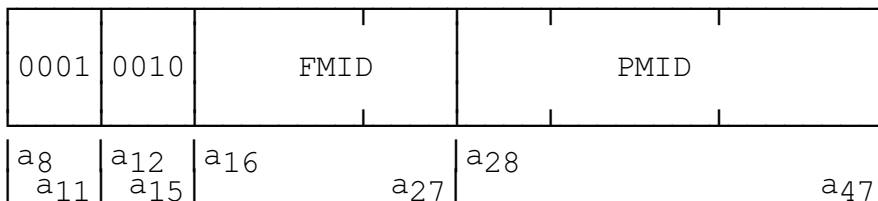


Figure 54

7.2.5.3.5 UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST

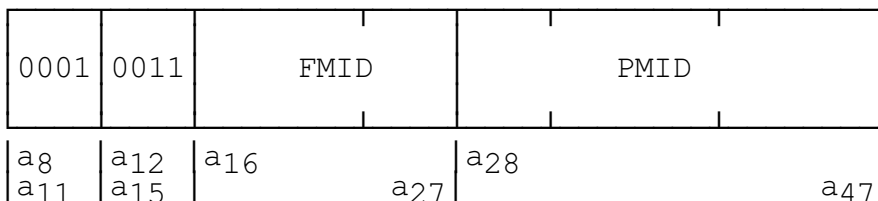


Figure 55

NOTE: An RFP that receives an UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST message does not return a confirm. It may listen to following frames to receive MAC attributes messages or data.

7.2.5.3.6 BEARER_CONFIRM

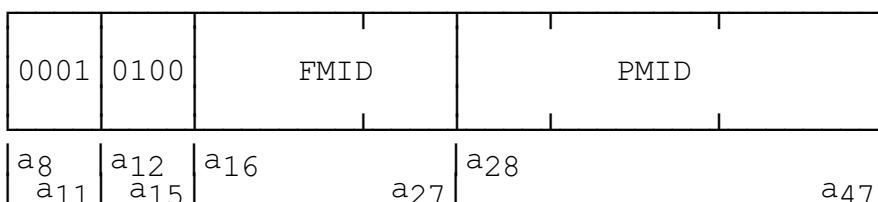


Figure 56

7.2.5.3.7 WAIT

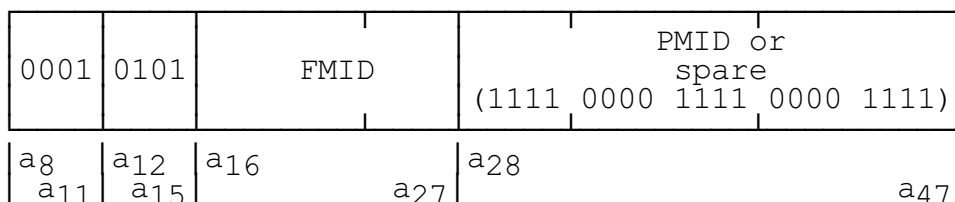


Figure 57

NOTE: The procedure does not make reference to the values of a_{16} to a_{47} . It is not intended that the contents of this field be included in any mandatory tests.

7.2.5.3.8 ATTRIBUTES_T.

0001	011	R / C	ECN	LBN	up/down/sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	C F	111 spr	0000 1111 (spare)
a_8 a_{11}	a_{12} a_{15}	a_{16} a_{19}	a_{20} a_{23}	a_{24} a_{25}	a_{26} a_{28}	a_{29} a_{31}	a_{32} a_{35}	a_{36} a_{39}	a_{40}	a_{47}	

Figure 58

Table 30

R/C	Meaning
0	request
1	confirm

ECN: Exchanged Connection Number

LBN: Logical Bearer Number

Table 31

up/down/sm/ss a_{24} a_{25}	Meaning
0 0	asymmetric uplink connection
0 1	asymmetric downlink connection
1 0	symmetric multibearer connection
1 1	symmetric single bearer connection

Unless the required service is a symmetric single bearer, BANDWIDTH_T. messages shall be transmitted at least once during connection setup.

Table 32

ser type	service type
000	I _N voice
001	I _N non-voice
010	I _p error detection
011	I _p , MAC modulo-2
100	unknown
101	}
to	} reserved
111	}

max life: unless the service type is Ip_error_correction, this parameter is set to 000.

For Ip_error_correction services this parameter determines the maximum lifetime of the packet (i.e. the latest possible retransmission) in the MAC layer (1 to 7 TDMA frames); "max life" = 000 indicates that no lifetime is set, i.e. retransmit until received without error.

NOTE: If in the future, the reserved connection types are used, the "max life" field may also be used (potentially for another purpose).

Table 33

slot type	Meaning
0000	normal full slot
0001	half slot with j = 0
0010	double slot
all others	reserved.

C_F = 0: this endpoint does not support C_F transmission;
 C_F = 1: this endpoint does support C_F transmission.

7.2.5.3.9 BANDWIDTH_T.

NOTE: This message is not needed for symmetric single duplex bearer connections.

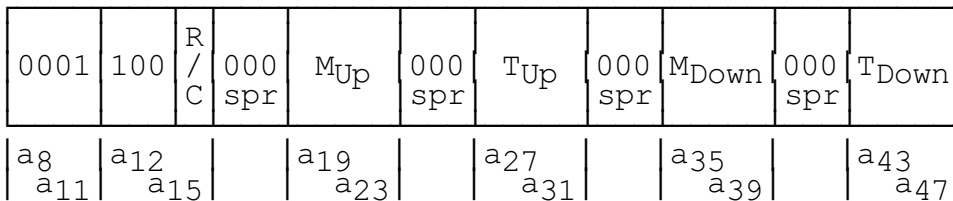


Figure 59

R/C : see subclause 7.2.5.3.8.

M_{Up}, M_{Down} : these are the minimum numbers of simplex bearers required by the DLC in, respectively, the PT to FT and the FT to PT directions.

T_{Up}, T_{Down} : these are the target numbers of simplex bearers in, respectively, the PT to FT and the FT to PT directions.

7.2.5.3.10 CHANNEL_LIST

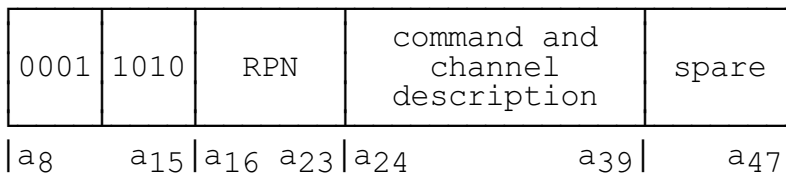


Figure 60

Command and channel description

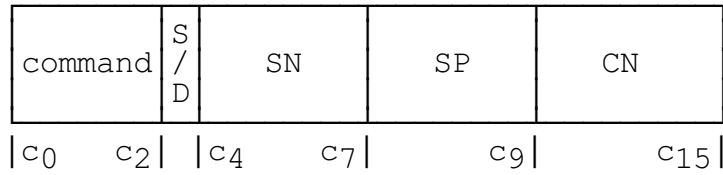


Figure 61

Table 34

command field	message type
000	ACTIVE
001	GOOD
010	POOR
011	F/S NOT
100	QUERY N
101	QUERY H
110	LISTEN
111	START

NOTE: The meanings of these message types are described in subclause 10.5.2.

For all messages except the F/S_NOT channel list message:

- S/D = 0 : double simplex bearer; or
- S/D = 1 : duplex bearer.

NOTE: The direction of asymmetry, and slot type are contained in the MAC_attributes messages or in the B-field bearer request message.

For the F/S_NOT message:

- S/D = 0 : carrier "CN" not supported (no setup on this carrier);
- S/D = 1 : blind slot pair "SP" (no setup on this slot pair).

The coding of SP, SN, and CN are the same as in the static system information described in subclause 7.2.3.2.

7.2.5.3.11 UNCONFIRMED_DUMMY

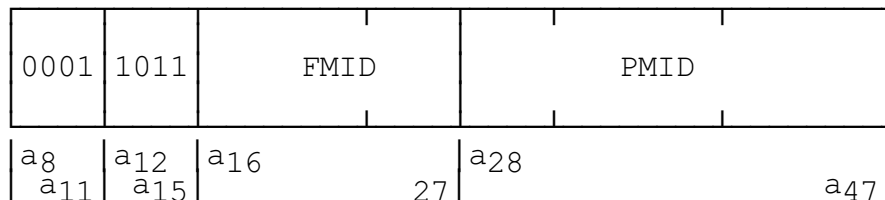


Figure 62

7.2.5.3.12 UNCONFIRMED_HANDOVER

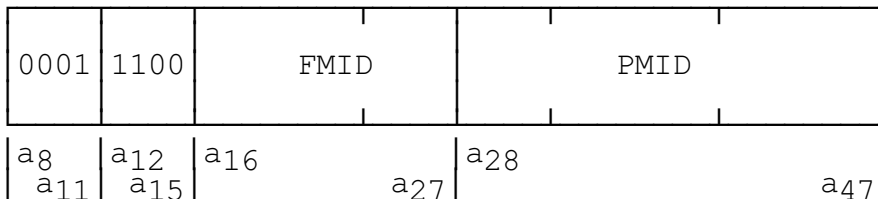


Figure 63

7.2.5.3.13 RELEASE

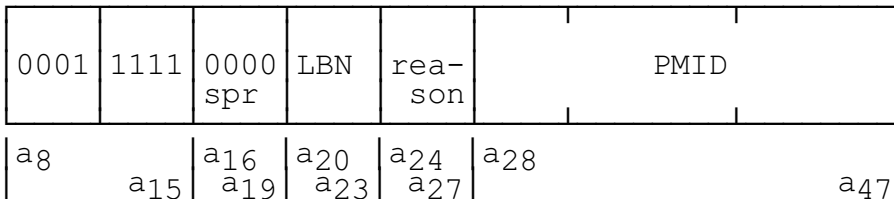


Figure 64

NOTE: LBN refers to the bearer that is to be released. This message can be sent on a different bearer of the same connection to the one that is to be released.

Table 35

reason				Reason for release
a ₂₄	a ₂₅	a ₂₆	a ₂₇	
0	0	0	0	unknown
0	0	0	1	bearer release (reduce capacity)
0	0	1	0	connection release
0	0	1	1	bearer setup or handover failed
0	1	0	0	bearer handover successfully completed
0	1	0	1	attempted bearer HO to another cluster
0	1	1	0	timeout, loss of signal
0	1	1	1	timeout, loss of handshake
1	0	0	0	requested unacceptable slot type
1	0	0	1	requested unacceptable MAC service
1	0	1	0	base station busy
1	0	1	1	reverse direction (double simplex)
1	1	0	0	duplicate PMID
1	1	0	1	unacceptable PMID
1	1	1	0	reserved
1	1	1	1	reserved

NOTE: "bearer handover successfully completed" is only intended for use in some double simplex release.

7.2.5.4 MAC layer test messages

Refer to Clause 12 for procedures.

7.2.5.4.1 Basic format

The basic format of the test message is given in figure 65 below.

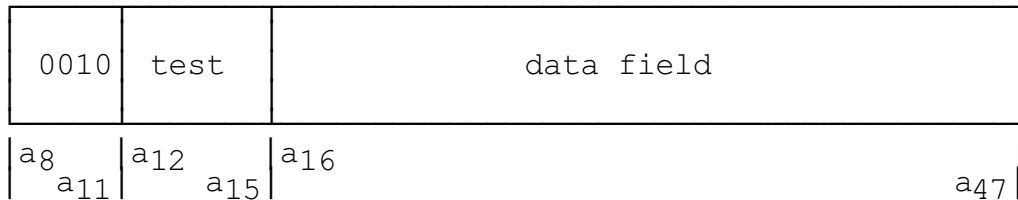


Figure 65

Table 36

test	test mode
0000	FORCE_TRANSMIT
0001	LOOPBACK
0010	DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY
0011	FORCE_BEARER_HANDOVER
0100	ESCAPE
0101	NETWORK_TEST
0110	}
to	} reserved
1110	}
1111	CLEAR_TEST_MODES

If more than one test message of the type test = 0000, but with a different data field is received, then the IUT shall implement the most recently received message.

7.2.5.4.2 FORCE_TRANSMIT

This message forces the IUT to transmit on a specific slot and RF frequency. Handover is prohibited by means of the "Handover Disable" (HD) bit. The particular slot the IUT shall transmit on is indicated in the Slot Pair (SP) field of the test message. The destination RF channel is encoded in the Channel Number (CN) field of the test message.

The format of the FORCE_TRANSMIT test message is given in figure 66 below.

0010	0000	(spr) 0101010	K P	H D	(spr) 000	SN	SP	CN	(spr) 00001111
a ₈ a ₁₁	a ₁₂ a ₁₅	a ₁₆ a ₂₂			a ₂₅ a ₂₇	a ₂₈ a ₃₁	a ₃₂ a ₃₃	a ₃₄ a ₃₉	a ₄₀ a ₄₇

Figure 66

The KP bit is a₂₃. It is set to "1" to prevent release of existing bearers, and set to "0" to initiate releasing of existing bearers.

The HD bit is a₂₄. It is set to "1" to disable handover and set to "0" otherwise.

For the coding of the slot number, the start position, and the carrier number refer to subclause 7.2.3.2.

See subclause 12.3 for the relevant procedures.

7.2.5.4.3 LOOPBACK_DATA

This message instructs the IUT to perform the loopback function in which a test data pattern transmitted by the LT is replicated in the reply transmission of the IUT. The test data pattern is a bit sequence located in the D-fields of the LT and IUT. The bits of the D-field that are affected by the loopback function depends on the equipment type and are given in table 37 below.

Table 37

DECT Implementation	Loopback Bits
Transmits only A-field:	a ₁₆ to a ₄₇
Transmits half-slots:	b ₀ to b ₇₉
Transmits full-slots:	b ₀ to b ₃₁₉
Transmits double-slots:	b ₀ to b ₇₉₉

Equipment capable of transmitting more than one slot type shall use the longest slot type.

For A-field loopback, the format of the LOOPBACK_DATA test message is given in figure 67 below.

0010	0001	Loopback data (A-field)				XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX XXXX			
a ₈ a ₁₁	a ₁₂ a ₁₅	a ₁₆							a ₄₇

Figure 67

NOTE: 'X' is the data looped back to the tester.

For B-field loopback, the format of the LOOPBACK_DATA test message is given in figure 68 below.

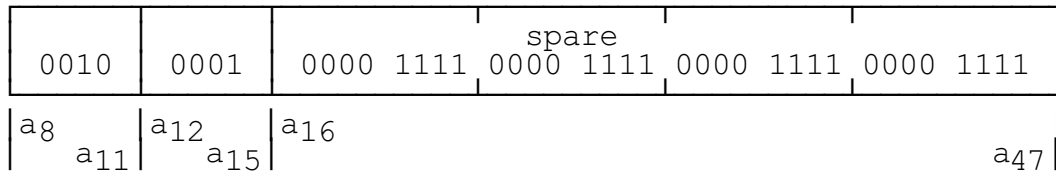


Figure 68

See subclause 12.4 for the relevant procedures.

7.2.5.4.4 DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY

This message inhibits antenna diversity operation in the IUT and selects an antenna. The antennas shall be numbered 0 to N where (N + 1) is the number of antennas employed in the antenna diversity operation. The numbering of antennas shall be done by the manufacturer.

IUTs with no antenna diversity shall ignore this message.

IUTs implementing proprietary diversity algorithms that do not recognise the Q1 bit setting (see subclause 8.2.1.2.2 of ETS 300 175-9 [9]) shall recognise the "Defeat Proprietary" bit (a₁₆).

IUTs receiving this message with an ANT > (N + 1) shall ignore this message.

The IUT remains in this mode until the test message "CLEAR_TEST_MODES" is received.

The format of the DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY test message is given in figure 69 below.

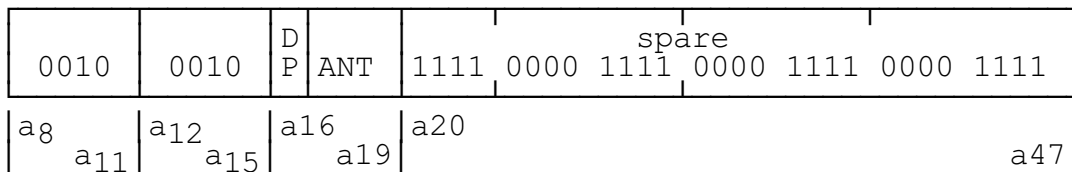


Figure 69

Tables 37 and 38 below, detail the encoding of the ANT and DP bits.

Table 38

ANT a ₁₇ , a ₁₈ , a ₁₉			Antenna number
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	2
0	1	1	3
1	0	0	4
1	0	1	5
1	1	0	6
1	1	1	7

Table 39

bit	meaning
a ₁₆	recognise Q1 bit setting

See subclause 12.5 for the relevant procedures.

7.2.5.4.5 FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER (portable part only)

This test message is received by portable parts that declare bearer handover capability.

This message causes the IUT to execute its bearer handover procedure. The new bearer shall be selected from the IUT's channel list (refer to subclause 11.4). The IUT shall complete execution of this procedure within 4 multiframes.

The format of the FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER message is given in figure 70 below.

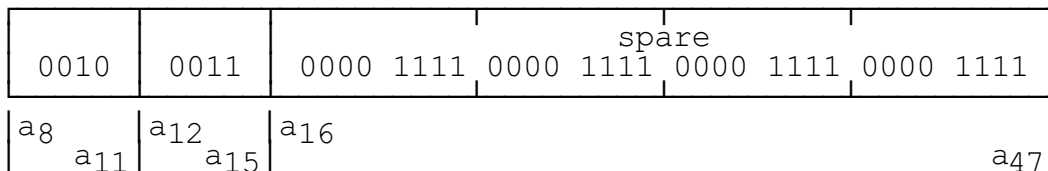


Figure 70

See subclause 12.6 for the relevant procedure.

7.2.5.4.6 ESCAPE

The transmission of this message to the IUT indicates that the data in the test data field is a proprietary test message. Every transmission of a proprietary test message shall be preceded by the "escape" message. The format of the ESCAPE message is given in figure 71 below.

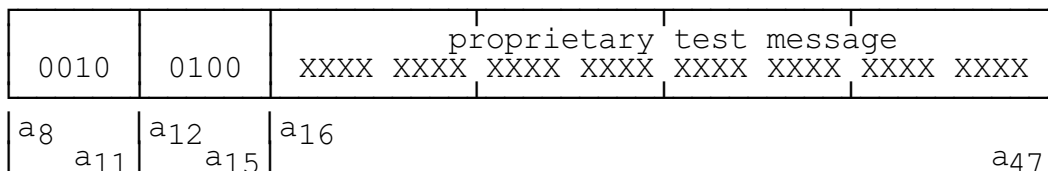


Figure 71

See subclause 12.7 for the relevant procedure.

7.2.5.4.7 NETWORK_TEST

The lower layer management entity in the testing unit supplies the MAC layer with a 32 bit SDU via the ME SAP. At the unit under test, the MAC layer passes the 32 bit test message out through the ME SAP to the lower layer management entity. See ETS 300 175-5 [5].

The format of the NETWORK_TEST message is given in figure 72 below.

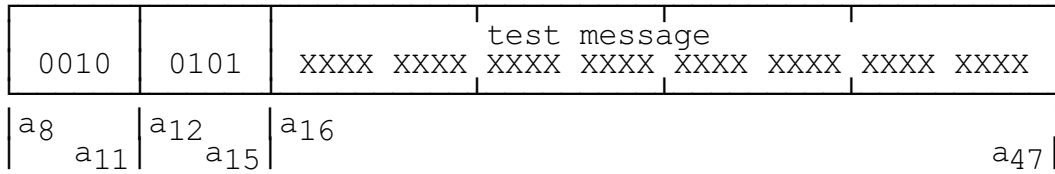


Figure 72

See subclause 12.8 for the relevant procedure.

7.2.5.4.8 CLEAR_TEST_MODES

The receipt of this message shall clear all current test modes (including proprietary) and return the IUT to the test standby mode within 16 frames.

The format of the CLEAR_TEST_MODES message is given in figure 73 below.

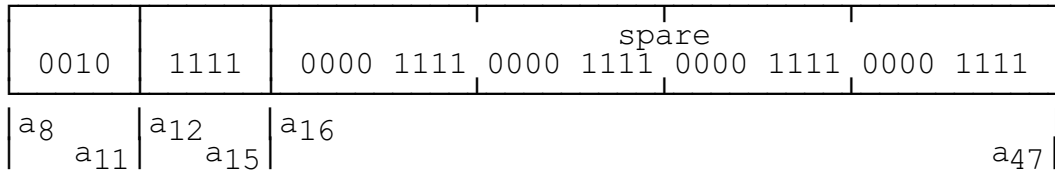


Figure 73

See subclause 12.9 for the relevant procedure.

7.2.5.5 Quality control

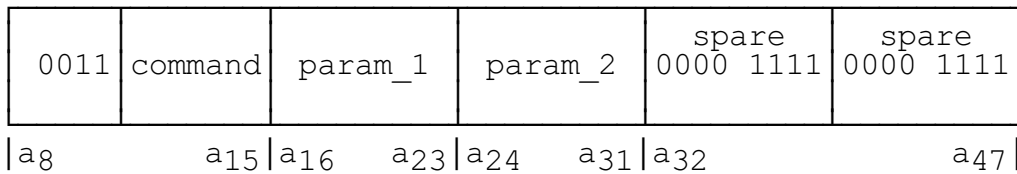


Figure 74

Table 40

command	param_1	param_2	Meaning
0000	0000 LBN	0000 1111	antenna switch for the single bearer identified by LBN request: PT --> FT reject: FT --> PT
0001	RPN	0000 1111	antenna switch for all bearers of this connection to the RFP identified by its RPN request: PT --> FT reject: FT --> PT
0010	0000 LBN	0000 0000 or RPN	bearer handover of the bearer identified by LBN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0011	0000 1111	0000 1111	connection handover request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0100	0000 LBN	frequency error	frequency control for the bearer identified by LBN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0101	RPN	frequency error	frequency control for all bearers of this connection to the RFP identified by its RPN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0110 to 1111			reserved

NOTE 1: The function of these commands depends on the transmission direction. The commands are either requests or rejects. A reject should only be used if the requested action is not supported.

NOTE 2: For basic connections LBN is set to 1111.

NOTE 3: All other values for bits a₁₆ to a₄₇ inclusive are reserved. Potential uses include RSSI reporting, synchronisation word correlation report, clock jitter report, etc.

NOTE 4: For the bearer handover request, the RPN is an optional parameter. If set to all "0" the FP does not propose a particular RFP for handover.

NOTE 5: A PP may or may not accept the RFP's proposal of the new RPN.

NOTE 6: The frequency error in kHz is encoded in 2's complement form, to give a range of + 127 kHz to - 128 kHz. The LSB of the error is placed in bit position a₃₁.

7.2.5.6 Broadcast and connectionless services

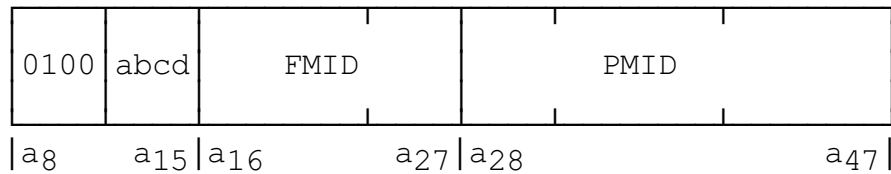


Figure 75

Table 41

a b c d	Meaning
0 0 0 0	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, half slot
0 0 0 1	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, full slot
0 0 1 0	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, double slot
0 0 1 1	reserved
0 1 0 0	CL _F , last transmission, half slot
0 1 0 1	CL _F , last transmission, full slot
0 1 1 0	CL _F , last transmission, double slot
0 1 1 1	reserved
1 0 0 0	C/L single transmission, no CL _F or CL _S service
1 0 0 1	CL _S service, first transmission
1 0 1 0	reserved
1 0 1 1	reserved
1 1 0 0	change dummy bearer position
1 1 0 1	reserved
1 1 1 0	Extended System Information; A-field procedure
1 1 1 1	Extended System Information; B-field procedure

The "extended system information" messages are the only messages used in both directions. All other messages are sent only in direction PT to FT.

Connectionless single transmission uplink services:

abcd = 01xx: CL_F service;

abcd = 1000: PMID exchange (no CL-channel data).

Connectionless double transmission uplink services:

abcd = 00xx followed by abcd = 01xx: CL_F service;

abcd = 1001 followed by a C_T tail: CL_S service.

Non-continuous broadcast services:

abcd = 1100: change dummy bearer position;

abcd = 111x: extended system information: this message shall be used for requests and replies of extended system information (see subclause 9.3.1).

7.2.5.7 Encryption control

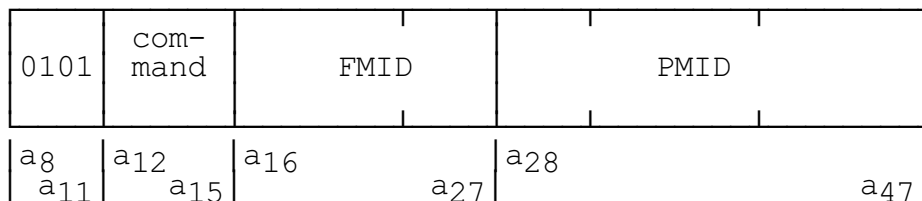


Figure 76

Table 42

command	Message
00xx	start encryption
01xx	stop encryption
10xx	reserved
11xx	reserved
xx00	request
xx01	confirm
xx10	grant
xx11	reserved

7.2.5.8 B-field setup, first PT transmission

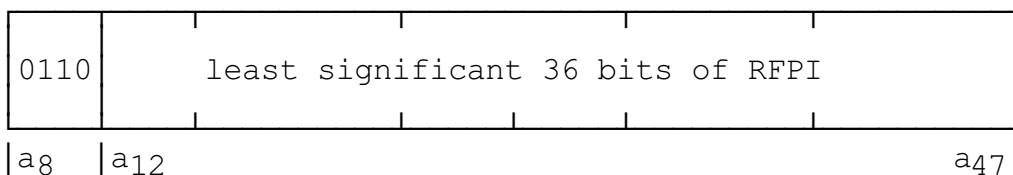


Figure 77

This message shall only be used for the first transmission on a new physical channel and only by PTs. It may be used by PTs to ensure that an RFP that is capable of both A- and B-field setups uses the B-field setup procedures.

7.2.5.9 Escape

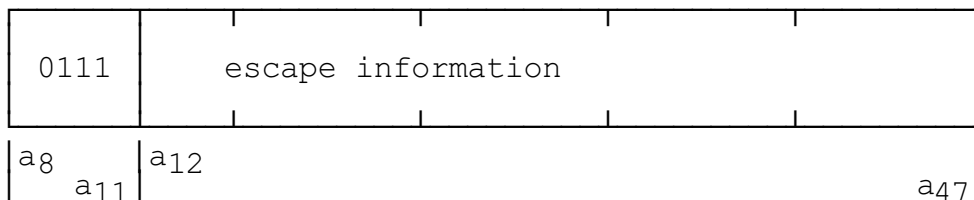


Figure 78

Any DECT equipment may transmit an escape message.

The content of the escape information field (a36 to a47) is not specified. This message is provided for application specific use.

7.2.5.10 TARI message

The message is assumed to be a "request" when transmitted in direction PT to FT, and to be a "reply" when transmitted in direction FT to PT.

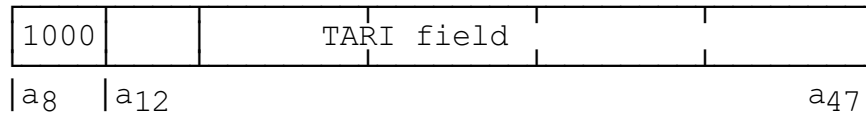


Figure 79

The management entity in the transmitting radio endpoint supplies the MAC layer with a 36 bit SDU via the ME SAP. At the receiving endpoint the MAC layer passes the 36 bit SDU out through the ME SAP to the management entity.

For the coding of the TARI field refer to ETS 300 175-6 [6].

7.3 Messages in the B-field

7.3.1 Overview

Messages may be carried in the B-field only when operating in the E-type multiplex (see subclause 6.2.2.2). Each B-field message occupies one subfield, and different subfields will usually carry a different message. The possible arrangements of B-field messages are defined by the C-MUX algorithm defined in subclause 6.2.2.3.

All B-field messages have a fixed length of 64 bits.

MAC B-field messages are used to :

- 1) set up, maintain and release bearers and connections;
- 2) provide extra flow, error and quality control in symmetric connections;
- 3) carry GF-channel data;
- 4) transport extended system information and TARI information; and
- 5) fill the B-field if there is insufficient C_F or G_F to fill the whole of the B-field.

A M_{Bn} message is a B-field MAC layer control message sent in the B_n subfield. M_{Bn} messages are sent in 80 bit packets using the E mapping described in subclause 6.2.2.2. This allows M_{Bn} messages to be compatible across all types of packets. Within the 80 bits, the format is as given in figure 80 below.

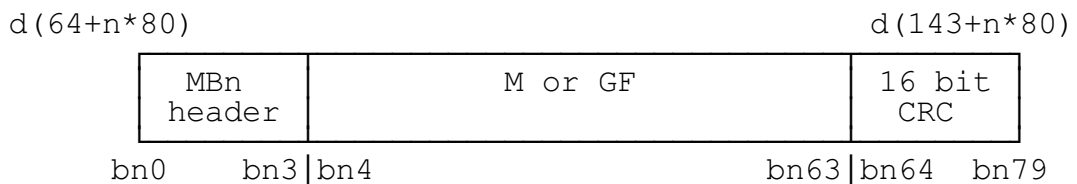


Figure 80

"n" denotes the number of the subfield in the B-field. For the D08 field, n=0, while for the D32 field n=. The CRC calculation is described in subclause 6.2.5.2.

The M_{Bn} header defines whether the message contains M or G_F-channel data and whether another M_{Bn} message follows in the next B_n subfield. In a full-slot transmission, up to 4 messages can be sent in the B-field.

Table 43

M _{Bn} header	Message type
X000	reserved
X001	advanced connection control
X010	null
X011	quality control
X100	extended system information
X101	GF-channel data packet
X110	reserved
X111	escape

For full slots:

- X = 1: subfield B(n+1) exists and contains a M_{Bn} message;
- X = 0: subfields B(n+1) to B3, inclusive, contain C_F or CL_F data.

For half slots:

X = 1.

7.3.2 Slot type encoding

Table 44

slot type	Meaning
0000	normal full slot
0001	half slot with j=0
0010	double slot
all others	reserved.

NOTE: If the slot type or j value is not implementable at the destination, a release is sent, preferably with the "reasons for release" field completed.

7.3.3 Advanced connection control

7.3.3.1 General format

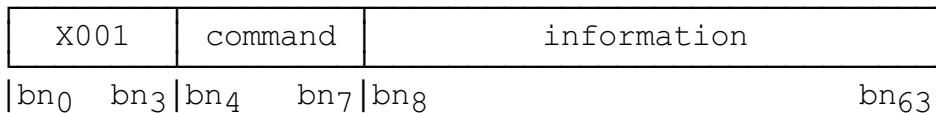


Figure 81

Table 45

command	Advanced connection control messages
0000	ACCESS_REQUEST **
0001	bearer_handover_request **
0010	connection_handover_request **
0011	unconfirmed_access_request **
0100	bearer_confirm
0101	wait
0110	attributes_B.request
0111	attributes_B.confirm
1000	bandwidth_B.request
1001	bandwidth_B.confirm
1010	channel_list
1011	unconfirmed_dummy **
1100	unconfirmed_handover **
1101	reserved
1110	reserved
1111	release

** indicates messages, that if transmitted by a PT, use the "first PT transmission" code.

7.3.3.2 BEARER_REQUEST

X00100	I/B /C /N	FMID	PMID	ECN	LBN	up/ down/ sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	spr 1111	
	bn ₀ bn ₅	bn ₆ bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₃	bn ₄₄ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₄₉	bn ₅₀ bn ₅₂	bn ₅₃ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₅₉	bn ₆₀ bn ₆₃

Figure 82

Table 46

I / B / C / N b ₆ b ₇	Meaning
0 0	access_request
0 1	bearer_handover_request
1 0	connection_handover_request
1 1	unconfirmed_access_request

For the coding of bits b₄₀ ... b₅₉, see subclause 7.2.5.3.8.

PMID = Portable part MAC layer IDentity (refer to subclause 11.7);

FMID = Fixed part MAC layer IDentity (refer to subclause 11.7).

7.3.3.3 BEARER_CONFIRM

X001	0100	FMID	PMID	ECN	LBN	up/ down/ sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	spr 1111
bn ₀	bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₃	bn ₄₄ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₄₉	bn ₅₀ bn ₅₂	bn ₅₃ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₅₉	bn ₆₀ bn ₆₃

Figure 83

For the coding of bits b₄₀ ... b₅₉, see subclause 7.2.5.3.8.

7.3.3.4 WAIT

X001	0101	FMID	PMID or spare 11110000111100001111	spare 00001111	00001111
bn ₀	bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀		bn ₆₃

Figure 84

NOTE: The procedure does not make reference to the values of bn₈ to bn₆₃. It is not intended that the contents of this field be included in any mandatory tests.

7.3.3.5 ATTRIBUTES_B.

X001	011	R / C	FMID	PMID	spare 0000 1111	up/ down/ sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	spr 1111
bn ₀	bn ₆ bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₄₉	bn ₅₀ bn ₅₂	bn ₅₃ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₅₉	bn ₆₀ bn ₆₃	

Figure 85

Coding of bits b₄₈ ... b₅₉ : see subclause 7.2.5.3.8.

NOTE: These messages are used when modifying a connection (typically as a result of a page with "unknown" service type).

7.3.3.6 BANDWIDTH_B.

X001100	R / C	FMID	1111 spr 0000 spr 1111	000 spr	MUp	000 spr	TUp	000 spr	MDown	000	TDown
bn ₀	bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₁	bn ₃₂ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₆₃				

Figure 86

For MUp, TUp, MDown and TDown refer to subclause 7.2.5.3.9.

7.3.3.7 CHANNEL_LIST

X0011010	RPN	1st command and channel description	2nd command and channel description	3rd command and channel description
bn ₀ bn ₇	bn ₁₅	bn ₃₁	bn ₄₇	bn ₆₃

Figure 87

"Command and channel description" shall have the same coding as in subclause 7.2.5.3.10. All three commands and channel descriptions shall apply to the same RFP, identified by RPN.

7.3.3.8 UNCONFIRMED_DUMMY

X001 1011	FMID	PMID	ECN	LBN	up/down/sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	spr 1111
bn ₀ bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₃	bn ₄₄ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₄₉	bn ₅₀ bn ₅₂	bn ₅₃ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₅₉	bn ₆₀ bn ₆₃

Figure 88

7.3.3.9 UNCONFIRMED_HANDOVER

X001 1100	FMID	PMID	ECN	LBN	up/down/sm/ss	ser type	max life	slot type	spr 1111
bn ₀ bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₁₉	bn ₂₀ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₃	bn ₄₄ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₄₉	bn ₅₀ bn ₅₂	bn ₅₃ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₅₉	bn ₆₀ bn ₆₃

Figure 89

7.3.3.10 RELEASE

X001 1111	FMID	PMID	spr 0000	LBN	spare 0000 1111	reason
bn ₀ bn ₇	bn ₈ bn ₂₃	bn ₂₄ bn ₃₉	bn ₄₀ bn ₄₃	bn ₄₄ bn ₄₇	bn ₄₈ bn ₅₅	bn ₅₆ bn ₆₃

Figure 90

- NOTE 1: LBN refers to the bearer that is to be released. This message can be sent on a different bearer of the same connection to the one that is to be released.
- NOTE 2: A release message shall not be accepted unless FMID and PMID are both correct.
- NOTE 3: Mandatory use of the reason field is expected to be minimal or even non-existent.

Table 47

reason	Explanation for release
0000 0000	unknown
0000 0001	bearer release (reduce capacity)
0000 0010	connection release
0000 0011	bearer setup or handover failed
0000 0100	bearer handover successfully completed
0000 0101	attempted bearer HO to another cluster
0000 0110	timeout, loss of signal
0000 0111	timeout, loss of handshake
0000 1000	requested unacceptable slot type
0000 1001	requested unacceptable MAC service
0000 1010	base station busy
0000 1011	reverse direction (double simplex)
0000 1100	duplicate PMID
0000 1101	unacceptable PMID
0000 1110	}
to	} reserved
1111 1111	}

NOTE 4: "Bearer handover successfully completed" is only intended for use in double simplex release.

7.3.4 Null

This message is used to fill bn subfields when there is no I data or CF data or GF data or other MBn messages to send.

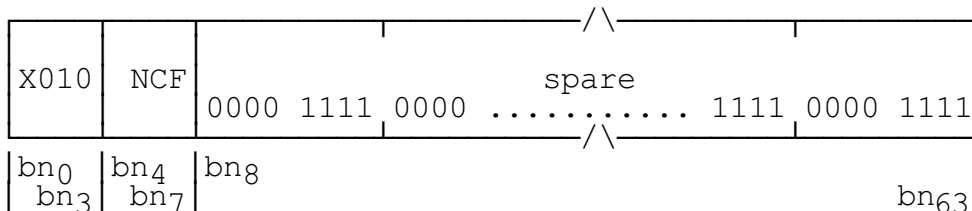


Figure 91

Table 48

NCF	Meaning
0000	no CF or CLF data in the B-field;
0001	one B-subfield contains CF or CLF data;
0010	two B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
0011	three B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
0100	four B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
0101	five B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
0110	six B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
0111	seven B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
1000	eight B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
1001	nine B-subfields contain CF or CLF data;
1010	} reserved
to	
1111	

7.3.5 Quality control

7.3.5.1 General format

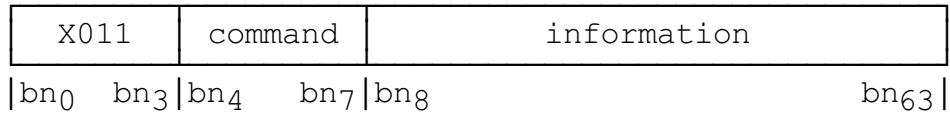


Figure 92

Table 49

command	Meaning
0000	} Bearer and Connection Control
to	
0101	
0110	} reserved
to	
1101	Reset
1110	Bearer quality in an asymmetric connection
1111	

7.3.5.2 Bearer and connection control

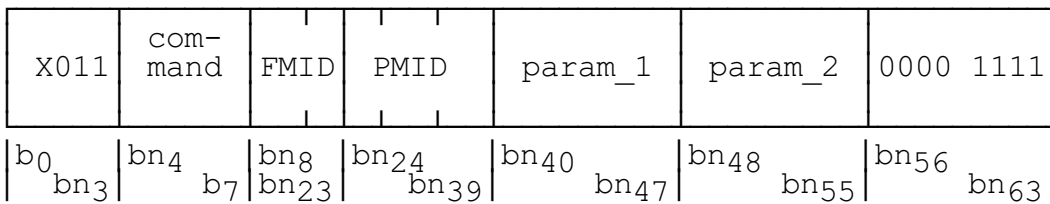


Figure 93

Table 50

command	param_1	param_2	Meaning
0000	0000 LBN	0000 1111	antenna switch for the single bearer identified by LBN request: PT --> FT reject: FT --> PT
0001	RPN	0000 1111	antenna switch for all bearers of this connection to the RFP identified by its RPN request: PT --> FT reject: FT --> PT
0010	0000 LBN	0000 0000 or RPN	bearer handover of the bearer identified by LBN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0011	0000 1111	0000 1111	connection handover request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0100	0000 LBN	frequency error	frequency control for the bearer identified by LBN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT
0101	RPN	frequency error	frequency control for all bearers of this connection to the RFP identified by its RPN request: FT --> PT reject: PT --> FT

NOTE 1: The function of these commands depends on the transmission direction. The commands are either requests or reject. A reject should only be used if the requested action is not supported.

NOTE 2: For the bearer handover request, the RPN is an optional parameter. If set to all "0" the FP does not propose a particular RFP for handover.

NOTE 3: A PP may or may not accept the RFP's proposal of the new RPN.

NOTE 4: The frequency error in kHz is encoded in 2's complement form, to give a range of + 127 kHz to - 128 kHz. The least significant bit of the error is placed in bit position bn55.

7.3.5.3 RESET

This message shall only be used in the MAC Ip_error_correction service.

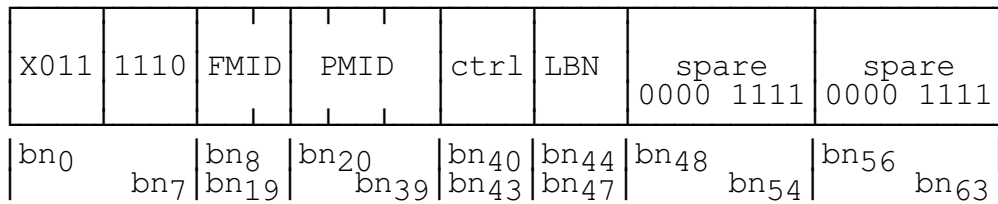


Figure 94

Table 51

ctrl	Meaning
00xx	request
01xx	confirm
0x00	reserved
0x01	1 st TDMA half frame
0x10	2 nd TDMA half frame
0x11	both TDMA half frames
1xxx	reserved

7.3.5.4 Bearer quality in an asymmetric connection

This is the "MAC-Mod2-ACKs" message.

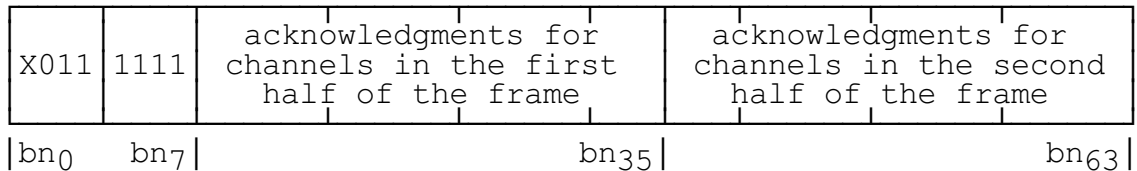


Figure 95

Acknowledgements for physical channels in the first half of the TDMA frame:

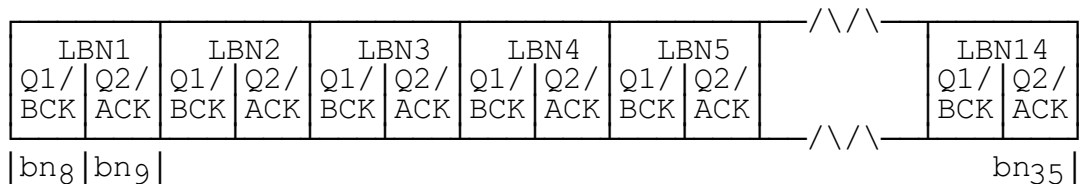


Figure 96

Acknowledgements for physical channels in the second half of the TDMA frame.

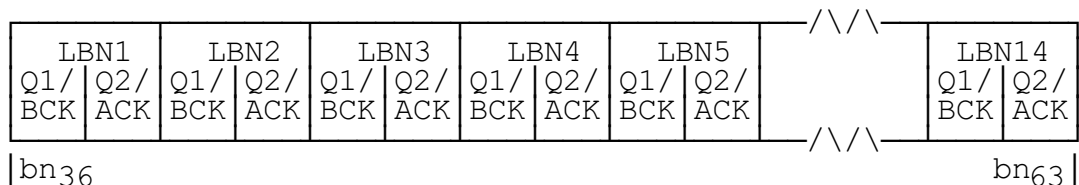


Figure 97

In pairs two bits are related to one simplex half of a double simplex bearer identified by the LBN. Depending on the MAC layer service the meaning of these bits is different.

For I_N and I_P error_detection services the two bits have the function of the Q1 and Q2 bit. The setting of the Q1 and Q2 bit are described in the procedures of subclause 10.8.1.3.

For the I_P error_correction service the two bits have the function of the BCK and ACK bit. The coding of these bits are described in subclause 10.8.2.4.

7.3.6 Extended system information

7.3.6.1 General format

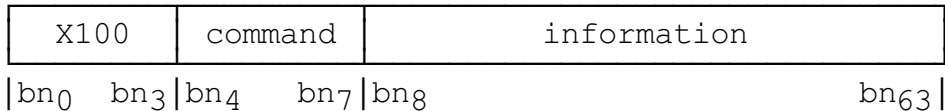


Figure 98

Table 52

command	Meaning
0000	TARI messages
0001	} reserved
to	
1111	

7.3.6.2 TARI messages

The management entity in the transmitting radio endpoint supplies the MAC layer with a 36 bit SDU via the ME SAP. At the receiving endpoint the MAC layer passes the 36 bit SDU out through the ME SAP to the management entity.



Figure 99

For the coding of the TARI field refer to ETS 300 175-6 [6].

7.3.7 G_F-channel data packet

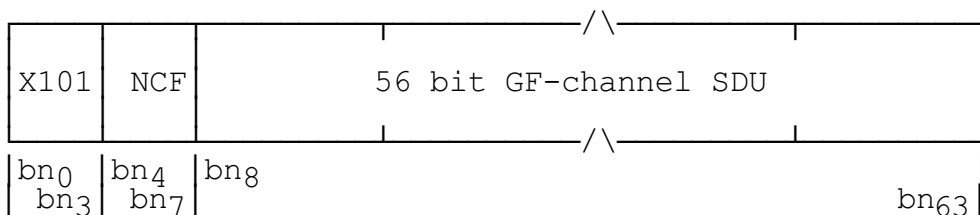


Figure 100

Table 53

NCF	Meaning
0000	no C _F data in the B-field
0001	one B-subfield contains C _F data
0010	two B-subfields contain C _F data
0011	three B-subfields contain C _F data
0100	four B-subfields contain C _F data
0101	five B-subfields contain C _F data
0110	six B-subfields contain C _F data
0111	seven B-subfields contain C _F data
1000	eight B-subfields contain C _F data
1001	nine B-subfields contain C _F data
1010	} reserved
to	
1111	

7.3.8 Escape

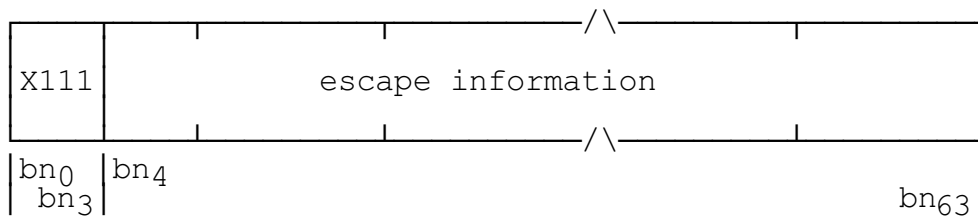


Figure 101

Any DECT equipment may transmit an escape message.

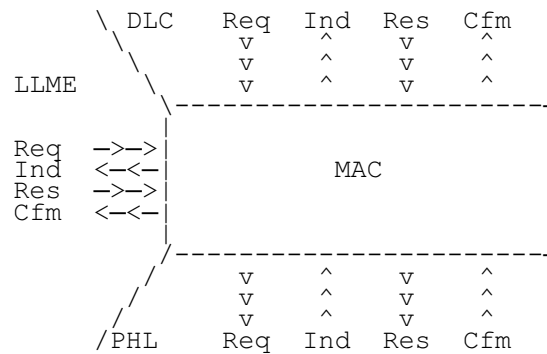
The content of the escape information field (bn₄ to bn₆₃) is not specified. This message shall not be used to perform a function that is specified in another part of the DECT CI standard.

8 Medium access layer primitives

The contents of Clause 8 are for information only. This Clause is aimed to assist in the description of layer to layer procedures.

These primitives are abstract and their concrete representations may vary from implementation to implementation. Therefore, they shall not be considered to be a testable entity.

Four types of primitives exist, Request (Req), Indicate (Ind), Response (Res) and Confirm (Cfm). A "Cfm" primitive only occurs as confirmation of an action initiated by a "Req" primitive. A "Res" primitive can only follow a "Ind" primitive. The direction of the primitives is shown in the diagram below:



8.1 Connection oriented service primitives

Connections are identified by the MAC Connection Endpoint Identifier, MCEI.

8.1.1 Connection setup: MAC-CON

Parameter list:

Table 54

Parameter	Req	Ind	Cfm
MCEI	X	X	X
FMID, NOTE 1	X	X	-
PMID	X	X	-
connection handover ?	X	X	-
old MCEI, NOTE 2	X	-	-
CF required ?	X	X	-
slot type	X	X	-
service type	X	X	-
max lifetime, NOTE 3	O	X	-
up/down/sm/ss, NOTE 4	O	X	-
connection type	-	X	X
ECN, NOTE 4 and 5	-	X	X
X = parameter exists O = parameter optional - = parameter does not exist in this primitive			
NOTE 1: FMID is only needed for fixed part initiated "fast setup". NOTE 2: The "old MCEI" parameter is only needed if "connection handover" = "yes" and the previous "connection type" = "basic". NOTE 3: The "maximum lifetime" parameter only applies to the IP error correction service. The setting of this parameter in the MAC-CON.Reg primitive is optional. Default value (i.e. assumed when not set) is: maximum lifetime = unlimited. NOTE 4: The setting of this parameter in the MAC-CON.Reg primitive is optional. Default value is "ss", the symmetric single bearer connection. NOTE 5: The "ECN" parameter is only used if "connection type" = "advanced".			

Parameter values:

MCEI = local matter

connection handover ? =

old MCEI = local matter, or null

CF required ? =

slot type = { double, full, half with j=0 }

service type = { lN_minimum_delay, lN_normal_delay, lP_error_detection, lP_error_correction, unknown, C-channel only }

maximum lifetime = { unlimited, 1, 2, ... , 7 }

up/down/sm/ss: up = asymmetric uplink connection
 down = asymmetric downlink connection
 sm = symmetric multibearer connection
 ss = symmetric single bearer connection

connection type =

ECN =

8.1.2 Connection modification: MAC-MOD

Parameter list:

Table 55

Parameter	Req	Ind	Cfm
MCEI	X	X	X
ECN	X	X	X
slot type	X	X	-
service type	X	X	-
max lifetime	X	X	-
target number of uplink simplex bearers	X	-	-
target number of downlink simplex bearers	X	-	-
minimum acceptable uplink simplex bearers	X	-	-
minimum acceptable downlink simplex bearers	X	-	-
X = parameter exists - = parameter optional			

Parameter values are the same as MAC-CON except:

MCEI = local matter

ECN =

slot type = { double, full, half with j=0 }

service type = { I_N_minimum_delay, I_N_normal_delay, I_P_error_detection, I_P_error_correction, C-channel only }

maximum lifetime = { unlimited, 1, 2, ... , 7 }

target number of uplink simplex bearers =

target number of downlink simplex bearers =

minimum acceptable uplink simplex bearers =

minimum acceptable downlink simplex bearers =

NOTE 1: Target number · minimum acceptable.

NOTE 2: (Uplink + downlink) μ 32.

NOTE 3: If "slot type" = "half" then target number = minimum acceptable = 1.

NOTE 4: "Slot type" shall only be used to adjust j.

8.1.3 CO data transmit ready: MAC-CO_DTR

Table 56

Parameter	Ind
MCEI	X
data channel type	X
number of segments	X
no. of duplex bearers	X
X = parameter exists	

data channel type =

number of segments =

no. of duplex bearers = integer; this value is only set for data channel type C_F

8.1.4 CO data transfer: MAC-CO_DATA

Parameter list:

Table 57

Parameter	Request	Indicate
MCEI	X	X
transmit data channel type	X	-
receive data channel type	-	X
number of segments	X	X
no. of bearers for control	X	-
SDU	X	X
CRC Results	-	O
X = parameter exists O = parameter optional - = parameter does not exist in this primitive		

Parameter values:

transmit data channel type = {G_F, C_S, C_F, I_N, I_P, null}

receive data channel type={G_F, C_S, C_F, I_N, I_P, unknown}

number of segments =

no of bearers for control = integer; this parameter is only set if transmit channel type is C_F

CRC results = local matter

NOTE: Except IN, all data is provided with MAC layer 16 bit CRCs. Indicating the CRC results may be needed in error detect services.

8.1.5 Restart DLC: MAC-RES_DLC

Parameter list:

Table 58

Parameter	Indicate
MCEI	X
X = parameter exists	

8.1.6 Connection release: MAC-DIS

Parameter list:

Table 59

Parameter	Request	Indicate
MCEI reason	X -	X O
X = parameter exists O = parameter optional - = parameter does not exist in this primitive		

reason = { normal, abnormal }

NOTE: Disconnect with the aim of reconnecting should be performed by sending appropriate higher layer messages before issuing this primitive.

8.1.7 MAC bandwidth: MAC-BW

Parameter list:

Table 60

Parameter	Ind	Res
MCEI	X	X
target number of uplink simplex bearers	X	-
target number of downlink simplex bearers	X	-
minimum acceptable uplink simplex bearers	X	-
minimum acceptable downlink simplex bearers	X	-
X = parameter exists - = parameter does not exist in this primitive		

Parameter values:

MCEI = local matter

target number of uplink simplex bearers =

target number of downlink simplex bearers =

minimum acceptable uplink simplex bearers =

minimum acceptable downlink simplex bearers =

8.1.8 Encryption

8.1.8.1 Load encryption key: MAC-ENC_KEY

Parameter list:

Table 61

Parameter	Request
MCEI SDU, containing encryption key	X X
X = parameter exists	

8.1.8.2 Enable/disable encryption: MAC-ENC_EKS

Parameter list:

Table 62

Parameter	Req	Ind	Cfm
MCEI	X	X	X
"go crypted / go clear" flag	X	X	X
X = parameter exists			

8.2 Connectionless and broadcast service primitives

8.2.1 Paging: MAC-PAGE

Parameter list :

Table 63

Parameter	Req	Ind
cluster ID 1	X	X
page type	X	-
length of page field	X	-
long flag	X	X
SDU	X	X
CRC results	-	O
X = parameter exists O = parameter optional - = parameter does not exist in this primitive		

Parameter values :

cluster ID = { all clusters / an integer }

page type =

length of page field = {0, 20, 36, 72, 108, 144, 180, 216}

long flag = ; this parameter is only needed for page fields of length 36

CRC results = local matter

8.2.2 Downlink connectionless: MAC-DOWN_CON

Table 64

Parameter	Req	Ind
logical channel	X	X
number of segments	X	X
ARI	-	X
data contains errors	-	X
SDU	X	X
X = parameter exists		

logical channel =

number of segments =

NOTE: Number of segments is only needed for CLF data.

8.2.3 Uplink connectionless: MAC-UP_CON

Table 65

Parameter	Req	Ind	Cfm
SDU length	X	X	-
SDU	O	O	-
PMID	-	X	-
data contains errors	-	X	-
status			X
X = parameter exist O = parameter optional - = parameter does not exist in this primitive			

SDU length = ; n = .

status = { no C/L uplink service, CLF not supported, data transmitted }

8.3 Management primitives

Parameter values shall not be defined for the management primitives in this ETS to allow the possibility of alternative implementations.

8.3.1 Connection control

8.3.1.1 Connection setup: MAC-ME-CON

Parameters:

- basic/advanced connection;
- ECN (if advanced connection);
- new connection/bearer handover/connection handover;
- old MCEI (if connection handover).

8.3.1.2 Connection setup allowed: MAC-ME-CON_ALL

Parameters:

- forbid/allow flag;
- forbid reason (i.e. asked for basic, can retry with advanced);
- ECN;
- new MBC required;
- MCEI.

8.3.1.3 Bearer release: MAC-ME-REL

This primitive is used by the LLME to release a bearer due to not finding an MBC on handover.

8.3.1.4 MBC release report: MAC-ME-REL_REP

Parameter:

- ECN.

8.3.2 System information and identities

8.3.2.1 FP information preloading: MAC-ME-RFP_PRELOAD

Parameters:

- PARI;
- RPN;
- SARI;
- fixed part capabilities;
- multiframe number.

8.3.2.2 PT information preloading: MAC-ME-PT_PRELOAD

Parameters:

- assigned individual TPUI;
- assigned/default flag.

8.3.2.3 System information output: MAC-ME-INFO

Parameters:

- PARI;
- RPN;
- SARI;

- fixed part capabilities;
- multiframe number.

8.3.2.4 Extended system info: MAC-ME-EXT.

Parameters:

- FMID;
- PMID;
- SDU.

8.3.3 Channel map: MAC-ME-CHANMAP

Parameters:

- strongest channels;
- Quietest/free channels.

8.3.4 Status reports: MAC-ME-STATUS

Parameters:

- call status;
- slot drift/slot theft (X-field) report;
- CRC report (retransmission report);
- timer status;
- handover required;
- diversity switch required.

8.3.5 Error reports: MAC-ME-ERROR

Parameters:

- service overload;
- call failure.

8.4 Flow control

8.4.1 MA SAP flow control

Transmitter: the BMC of an FT may accept MAC-PAGE.Req primitives. According to the paging type (fast or normal, see subclause 9.1.3.1), the SDU length, and the T-Mux algorithm the BMC will distribute the P-channel information to all TBCs, CBCs and DBCs of a cluster. If the BMC cannot distribute the SDU contained in the MAC-PAGE.Req primitive, that SDU is discarded and nothing is returned to the higher layers.

Receiver: the BMC in a PT may receive paging messages from any bearer. If B_S-channel messages were received in one TDMA frame the BMC should send at least one of these messages with a MAC-PAGE.Ind primitive to the DLC.

8.4.2 MB SAP flow control

The flow control of S_{IN} , CL_S and CL_F -channel data depends on the transmission direction and the connectionless service. Flow control is described separately for downlink and uplink directions in the corresponding procedures in subclauses 9.1.2 and 9.2 respectively.

8.4.3 MC SAP flow control

The MBC shall request the DLC for all data to be transmitted from the C_S , C_F , G_F , I_N and I_P -channel. With the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive the MBC may request for segments of several channels or selectively for segments of only one channel. The DLC responds by issuing one or several MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitives to the MAC. A MAC-CO_DATA primitive shall carry data segments from only one logical (sub)channel. Data is delivered from the MAC to the DLC with the MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive.

The following primitive flow shall be provided on the transmitting side:

- a) **C_S and C_F -channels:** before an ARQ window starts (see subclause 10.8.1) the MAC shall request with MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitives for the maximum number of allowed higher layer control segments (C_S and C_F -channel data). By requesting C_F segments the MAC indicates the number of established duplex bearers. The DLC shall respond with MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitives. These primitives shall contain at most the indicated number of C_S and C_F segments, and for data type C_F , the number of duplex bearers allowed to carry higher layer control.

NOTE 1: The number of allowed C_S or C_F segments indicated with the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive may be zero, e.g. when retransmissions are needed.

If no C_F -channel is provided the number of acceptable C_F segments in the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive and the number of allowed duplex bearers for higher layer control in the MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive shall always be zero.

The C_F data shall always be transmitted on the allowed number of duplex bearers indicated with the MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive. This rule is also applied for retransmissions of C_F data. The MAC shall only retransmit the C_F data on the number of bearers specified by the DLC, a value "0" disables all retransmissions.

A MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive may allow the DLC to issue one or more C_F segments. The DLC may respond with a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive for C_F data that reserves some bearers for higher layer control but the primitive itself does not contain a SDU (i.e. number of C_F segments = 0). The number of reserved bearers shall not be used for I-channel data. If no or not sufficient G_F -channel data is available (see item d)) the MAC shall fill the remaining segments (see item e)).

- b) **I_N normal delay and I_P :** before a TDMA half frame starts the MAC shall request with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive for all new I-channel data segments which can be transmitted in this TDMA half frame. The DLC shall reply with a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive. This primitive shall contain the requested number of I-channel segments for the I_N normal delay service. For I_P services the number of delivered I_P segments shall not exceed the number indicated in the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive. If a TDMA half frame is the beginning half frame of an ARQ window, the I-channel request shall follow the C-channel request.

If two bearers with the same LBN are maintained during bearer handover, I-channel data shall be duplicated on both bearers, the new and the old bearer.

- c) **I_N_minimum_delay:** just before the transmission of a bearer carrying I_N data in a I_N_minimum_delay service starts the MAC request with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive this segment. The DLC shall respond with a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive and deliver a I_N segment.
If two bearers with the same LBN are maintained during bearer handover, I-channel data may be different on both bearers. The MAC shall ask for data for the two bearers using two independent primitives. See Annex H for information regarding seamless handover operation.
- d) **G_F-channel:** if the G_F-channel is used (Ip service) and capacity is available for G_F segments, the MAC request just before the transmission starts with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive and indicates the maximum number of acceptable G_F segments. The DLC may respond with a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive and deliver at most the indicated number of segments. Capacity can be available on bearers carrying some higher layer control, extended MAC control or on bearers which are not used to carry either C_F or Ip data.
- e) **Filling:** if the DLC delivers insufficient control segments for a particular bearer, the MAC shall fill the remaining segments.

NOTE 2: If no control segments are delivered by the DLC, the MAC shall fill all segments.

NOTE 3: I_N mode filling is performed by the DLC.

The following primitive flow shall be provided on the receiving end:

- a) if the A-field CRC fails, the B-field data segments are delivered with a MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive, and are labelled as "unknown";
- b) correctly received new C_S and C_F data segments shall be delivered with a MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive to the DLC at TDMA half frame boundaries;
- c) correctly received G_F segments are delivered to the DLC immediately with a MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive;
- d) for the Ip_error_correction and I_N_minimum_delay services, correctly received I-channel segments and all B-field segments labelled as "unknown" are delivered to the DLC immediately with a MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitive;
- e) for the Ip_error_detection and I_N_normal_delay services, Correctly received I-channel segments and segments labelled as "unknown" are issued to the DLC with MAC-CO_DATA.Ind primitives at half frame boundaries. Sequencing shall be provided. For sequencing the "unknown" segments are treated as I-channel segments.

9 Broadcast and connectionless procedures

9.1 Downlink broadcast and connectionless procedures

This subclause describes the procedures for the continuous downlink BMC and CMC services.

9.1.1 Downlink broadcast procedure

9.1.1.1 Broadcast information

The broadcast information provides three basic services to any locked PPs:

- 1) access rights identifiers: (N-channel and Q-channel);
- 2) system information: (Q-channel);
- 3) paging information: (P-channel).

Access Rights Identifiers (ARIs):

Access right identifiers are broadcast in two channels. The primary access rights identifier is repeated most frequently using the N-channel, and shall be provided by all RFPs. The RFP may indicate the existence of secondary access rights identities. Any SARIs are broadcast as part of the Q-channel using the SARI message (see subclause 7.2.3.6).

NOTE: Tertiary Access Right Identifiers (TARIs) may also exist. These are available on demand. See subclause 9.3.

The ARIs determine if a PP can request service from the RFP, according to the rules given in ETS 300 175-6 [6].

System information:

System information gives many details about the operation of the fixed part. This is a mixture of general information, plus RFP specific information.

Certain system information messages are essential for PTs to lock to a system. These messages shall be transmitted by all RFPs. The contents and provisions of these messages and the maximum interval between repeats are defined in subclause 7.2.3. Transmission of these messages is described in subclause 11.1.1. The PT locking procedure is defined in subclause 11.3.

Paging information:

Paging information is used to send transient information to locked PPs. The main application of this service is to deliver call setup messages, these messages are used to connect incoming (FP-originated) calls.

There is a fast and a normal paging mode. In normal paging mode the paging message positions within a multiframe are restricted to minimise the duty cycle of idle locked PPs. This enables idling PPs to switch off for the other frames. However, paging message delays may occur, and the fast paging mode is defined for cases where a higher duty cycle is acceptable and shorter delay is wanted. Fast paging is expected to be primarily used for data terminals.

Paging procedures are defined in subclause 9.1.3.

9.1.1.2 Channel selection for downlink broadcast services

As defined in subclause 5.7.1 the continuous broadcast service shall always be available at each CSF. This service shall be provided on:

- all traffic bearers with transmissions in the direction FT to PT;
- any connectionless bearer used for a downlink CMC service;
- the dummy bearer.

Channel selection to provide the downlink broadcast service shall only be applied to setup a dummy bearer, and may occur if either:

- 1) in presence of traffic bearers neither a bearer providing a connectionless downlink service nor a dummy bearer exists; or
- 2) the last bearer with transmissions in the direction FT to PT is released, and neither a dummy bearer nor a bearer providing a connectionless downlink service exists; or
- 3) one dummy bearer but no traffic bearer exists and the CSF tries to install a second dummy bearer; or
- 4) the RFP decides to change the physical channel for a dummy bearer; or
- 5) the RFP receives a "change dummy bearer position" message (see subclause 7.2.5.6) and the FT's CSF allows a change; or

NOTE: It depends on the system configuration if a CSF allows a dummy bearer change when requested. FTs may ignore a "change dummy bearer position" message.

- 6) a connectionless downlink service has finished.

Except for situation 6) above, the FT shall choose a channel according to subclause 11.4.3 with following preferences:

For situation 2) above: if the last bearer with transmissions in the direction FT to PT was a traffic bearer, this bearer should be converted into a dummy bearer.

For situation 5) above: the physical channel proposed in the "change dummy bearer position" message should be chosen if allowed (subclause 11.4.3).

If a CSF decides to install dummy bearer(s) when a connectionless service has finished (situation 6)) above, the CSF shall convert the connectionless downlink bearers to dummy bearers.

9.1.1.3 Downlink broadcast procedure description

The downlink broadcast procedure is defined by the T-MUX rule (refer to subclause 6.2.2.1). This rule defines the distribution of the available capacity for Q, N and P-channels.

The Q-channel information depends on the system configuration. Q-channel capacity shall be split for transmission of the different messages according to the rules defined in subclause 7.2.3.1.

The P-channel capacity shall be used as defined in subclause 9.1.3.

9.1.2 Downlink connectionless procedure

9.1.2.1 Channel selection at the RFP

If dummy bearers exist in the CSF, all dummy bearers shall be converted into connectionless bearers.

When no dummy bearer is present or when the RFP decides to change the physical channel to provide the connectionless downlink service, the RFP shall choose a channel according to subclause 11.4.3.

BMC services may be used to announce the creation of a new downlink service.

9.1.2.2 Downlink connectionless procedure description

FT procedure:

The CBC of a downlink service normally transmits continuously, i.e. in one slot every frame (refer to subclause 5.7). The CBC supports the BMC and the CMC downlink service. Dependent on the downlink service (refer to subclause 5.7.2.1) the DLC may deliver CL_S, CL_F or SI_N data with a MAC-DOWN_CON.Req primitive. During SI_N services the DLC shall submit one segment of SI_N channel data per frame. For CL_F services the DLC may submit at most the maximum number of CL_F segments that can be transmitted in one frame. In addition the DLC may deliver one segment of CL_S data every second frame.

CL_S data is transmitted by the RFP strictly following the T-MUX rules defined in subclause 6.2.2.1. No numbering is applied for CL_S segments. The TA bits in the A-field header may use either code for C_T tails.

CL_F data is positioned in the B-field according to the definition in subclause 6.2.2.3.

PT Procedure:

Predicate: The PT has a CBC installed and is receiving the FT's connectionless bearer.

NOTE 1: The FT's connectionless downlink transmissions can be recognised by the special header coding for the N_T tails. In addition, the FT may use the BMC service to broadcast the connectionless bearer position.

The PT's CMC delivers all connectionless data together with the CRC results to the DLC using the MAC-DOWN_CON.Ind primitive. If the A-field was received with errors any B-field data shall be delivered with data type set to "unknown". The A-field tail shall be delivered as "unknown" on A-field CRC failure only when received in a TDMA frame where C_T tails in the downlink direction are allowed (refer to subclause 6.2.2.1).

9.1.3 Paging broadcast procedure

In subclause 9.1.3 the following definitions shall apply:

if "length of page field" = 0, the page is "zero length";

if "length of page field" = 20, the page is "short";

if "length of page field" = 36, the page is "full" or "long"; and

if "length of page field" > 36, the page is "long".

9.1.3.1 RFP paging broadcasts

Paging messages are used to alert a PP at any location within a DECT fixed part. The B_S-channel is handled by the broadcast message controller and the broadcast controllers in every TBC, CBC, and DBC.

The BMC in each cluster shall check that the "cluster ID" parameter in the MAC-PAGE.Reg primitive refers to the BMC's cluster. Zero length, short, full and long pages are distinguished by their different SDU length and the "long" flag for SDU length 36.

All paging messages are broadcast by an RFP using the P_T type tails. Within one cluster, all BS-channel information shall be duplicated in the P_T type tails of all bearers.

The BMC shall not generate a P_T type tail containing short, full, or long page information except after having received a MAC-PAGE.Reg primitive. Zero length pages may be generated either after receiving a MAC-PAGE.Reg primitive with "length of page field" = 0, or by the broadcast controller in the TBC, CBC, or DBC itself. On a traffic bearer, N_T type tails should usually be sent in preference to P_T type tails containing zero length pages.

No more than one zero length page shall be sent in any multiframe.

The MAC-PAGE.Reg primitive shall define one of two possible paging types:

- normal paging;
- fast paging.

P_T type tail transmissions are only allowed in certain frames of the multiframe (refer to subclause 6.2.2.1). Fast paging may only be used to alert PPs that listen to all allowed frames for P_T tails. Normal paging is applied to alert PPs that do not listen to all of these frames. To ensure that PPs have not to listen to all allowed frames for P_T tails within one multiframe but can receive all page tails of the normal paging type transmitted in that multiframe the FT sets an extend flag in the P_T tail header. Paging tails of the normal and fast paging type shall be transmitted within a multiframe according to the following rules:

Fast full and fast short paging messages and the first segment of a fast long page message may be placed in any frame in which transmission of P_T type tails is permitted, except that they shall not interrupt long pages.

NOTE 2: Higher layer functions are used to ascertain whether a PT is likely to respond to fast paging.

Fast zero length pages shall be treated as normal, zero length pages. Normal full, normal short and normal zero length paging messages and the first segment of a normal long page message shall be restricted to the following frames:

- a) frame 0 in any multiframe sequence;
- b) frame 2, only if frame 0 has the extend flag set to 1;
- c) frame 4, only if frames 0, 2 have the extend flag set to 1;
- d) frame 6, only if frames 0, 2, 4 have the extend flag set to 1;
- e) frame 10, only if frames 0, 2, 4, 6 have the extend flag set to 1;
- f) frame 12, only if frames 0, 2, 4, 6, 10 have the extend flag set to 1.

In frame 12, the extend flag shall be set to 0.

Long pages shall have the extend flag set to 0.

NOTE 3: Within one multiframe, at most one long page of the normal paging type may be transmitted, and this is the last transmitted page of the normal paging type for that multiframe.

Long pages are divided into segments of 36 bits and shall be transmitted in successive frames in which P_T type tails are permitted. Long pages shall not continue from frame 12 to frame 0.

Every P_T tail contains a 4 bit header. One bit is the extend flag, referred to above. The other three bits in this header indicate the length of the page. For the B_S SDU length 36 two codes are used to distinguish full and long pages. Pages longer than 36 bits make use of three codes, one indicating "the first 36 bits of a long page" another "not the last 36 bits of a long page", and the other indicating "the last 36 bits of a long page".

Short pages contain 2 bytes of MAC layer information. Zero length pages contain 20 bits of RFP identity and then 2 bytes of MAC layer information. See subclause 7.2.4 for the format of the P_T messages. The broadcast controller in each TBC, CBC or DBC decides which type of MAC layer information is placed in the two byte field, and the information shall be specific to that RFP.

The BMC shall at least distribute full and short pages to the broadcast controllers in TBCs, CBCs and DBCs for transmission in frame 0. The BMC need not distribute pages to the broadcast controllers in TBCs, CBCs, and DBCs for transmission in frames other than frame 0.

The broadcast controller in a TBC, CBC or DBC shall transmit the P_T type tail distributed to it by the BMC in the frame indicated by the BMC.

The MAC layer shall transmit an N_T type tail in frame 0 at least once every T205 seconds.

The BMC shall not supply the bearers in its cluster with page messages that are older than T204 multiframes, measured from the time instant when the MAC-PAGE.Reg primitive was received. This limits the lifetime of a page message in the MAC layer.

NOTE 3: This limit applies to MAC layer repeats as well as to initial transmissions.

"Zero length" and "long" pages shall be issued by a cluster's BMC to all TBCs, CBCs and DBCs not more than once.

For FPs that do not allow PPs to enter into low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode (see subclause 11.3.3). Provided that capacity is available and the lifetime of the page information in the MAC layer has not expired, "short" and "full" pages shall be issued by the BMC at least once and may be repeated at most three times. New page messages have priority over repetitions.

For FPs that allow the PPs to enter into low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode, provided that capacity is available and the lifetime of the page information in the MAC layer has not expired, the BMC shall issue "short" and "full" pages for a first transmission to all TBCs, CBCs and DBCs. The BMC shall repeat the transmission of "short" and "full" page messages in the three multiframes following the first transmission of the messages, provided that the MAC layer lifetime has not expired. Repeats of page messages have priority over first transmissions of new page messages.

NOTE 4: MAC control added to short page messages (refer to subclause 7.2.4) need not be the same for all repetitions.

NOTE 5: The FP broadcasts within the "fixed part capabilities" message (subclause 7.2.3.4) whether or not PPs are allowed to enter the low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode.

9.1.3.2 PP paging procedures

9.1.3.2.1 PP paging detection

Idle_Locked is the normal state of a PP between calls. In this state the PP maintains synchronism with at least one RFP by receiving regularly P_T or N_T type tail messages on any bearer from an RFP. The frequency of the reception depends on the Idle_Locked mode:

- high duty cycle Idle_Locked mode;
- normal Idle_Locked mode;
- low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode.

These modes are described in subclause 11.3.3 and define the ability to receive page messages.

9.1.3.2.2 PP paging processing

The extend flag should be used to extend normal page detection, irrespective of the CRC result (pass or fail).

The various lengths of page fields shall be handled as follows:

Zero length page: a MAC-PAGE.Ind primitive shall not be issued. The contents of the P_T tail may be used by the portable termination.

Short and full page: the complete B_S-channel SDUs should be delivered to the higher layer, irrespective of the CRC result (pass or fail) with a MAC-PAGE.Ind primitive. For short pages the rest of the information in the P_T tail may be used by the PT.

Long page: the complete B_S-channel SDU of a long page should be delivered to the higher layer with a MAC-PAGE.Ind primitive, provided that all parts of the message (see subclause 9.1.3.1) are received without error (CRC passed).

NOTE 1: The BMC in the PT may assemble a complete message from receptions on several bearers.

NOTE 2: Bearers from different RFPs may carry different page messages, but the page messages are the same for all RFPs belonging to one cluster.

9.2 Uplink connectionless procedures

9.2.1 General

This procedure allows the DLC layer in a PT to send a short protected message to the DLC layer in the FT. The PT's MAC layer may use a random access technique to select when to transmit the message.

To provide protection, the PT's MAC layer adds CRCs to the higher layer data.

The connectionless uplink service consists of one or two transmissions on a selected C/L uplink bearer. For connectionless uplink services the number of transmissions from a single PT shall not exceed N203 for any period of T215 multiframes.

Segment numbering is not defined for this service.

9.2.2 Bearer selection for the connectionless uplink

The "standard capabilities" Q_T message shall indicate whether an FT offers the connectionless uplink service. If it does not provide this service, the PT shall not attempt to make connectionless uplink transmissions. If a "connectionless uplink" service is provided, but C_F messages are not supported, the PT's MAC layer shall not attempt to transmit CL_F data.

When no C_F-channel is supported at the FT (see "standard capabilities", subclause 7.2.3.4.2) and a PT's MAC layer receives a MAC-UP_CON.Reg primitive containing CL_F segments, the PT shall respond with a MAC-UP_CON.Cfm primitive with the status parameter set to "CL_F not supported".

For RFPs of an FP which supports the C/L uplink service (see "fixed part capabilities", subclause 7.2.3.4), the TDD pair of any dummy or C/L downlink bearer shall be considered as a C/L uplink bearer, i.e. the RFPs listen to the allocated channel in all TDMA frames.

If a dummy bearer or a connectionless downlink bearer can be found within T214 frames after receiving a MAC-UP_CON.Reg primitive, the PT shall use the TDD pair of this bearer. Otherwise the PT shall select a channel for the uplink service according to the procedure defined in subclause 11.4.2.

NOTE 1: An RFP may provide one dummy bearer when traffic bearers are present. If a connectionless downlink service is needed this dummy bearer is converted to a connectionless bearer and is the only bearer at the RFP which supports the C/L downlink service. RFPs may broadcast the position of a permanent broadcast or connectionless bearer using the BMC service (P_T tail).

NOTE 2: At least one dummy bearer is always maintained when no traffic or connectionless bearer for downlink transmissions exist.

A dummy bearer is marked as a short bearer (no B-field) in the BA field of the A-field header and uses the normal identification for N_T tails.

A connectionless downlink bearer is marked by using a special identification for N_T tails.

9.2.3 Procedure for the connectionless uplink

9.2.3.1 Predicates

- 1) The PT shall be in the Idle_Locked or Active_Locked state;
- 2) the PT shall know of at least one bearer suitable for an uplink connectionless transmission (see subclause 9.2.2);
- 3) the PT knows the FMID of a suitable RFP;
- 4) the PT has a CBC installed.

9.2.3.2 PT D-field construction

When the PT's MAC layer receives a MAC-UP_CON.Reg primitive it constructs one or two D-fields to be transmitted by its physical layer.

The A-field of the first D-field contains the "first PT transmission" TA bits; FMID; PMID; and a byte identifying the connectionless uplink service (see subclause 7.2.5.6).

For the CL_F service as many CL_F segments as possible are placed in the B-field, and MAC layer CRCs are added. Segments of CL_F data are positioned according to the rules of subclause 6.2.2.3.

If the SDU length is 0 (only PMID exchange) or 40 bits (CLS service), the B-field may be filled in any manner with the BA code in the A-field header = 000, or need not even be transmitted at all with the BA code = 111.

A second D-field shall be constructed for CLF services with 11 to 20 segments in double slot mode, with 5 to 8 CLF segments in full slot mode, or with 2 CLF segments in half slot mode, and for the CLS service.

For the CLS service the TA bits in the second D-field indicate data from the CLS-channel by using either of the C_T tail coding and place the SDU in the tail.

For the CLF services the A-field shall contain a M_T tail identifying the second transmission of a connectionless uplink service (see subclause 7.2.5.6).

9.2.3.3 PT transmission sequence

Transmission sequence of the PT's CBC depends on the channel selection criteria:

- a) the selected channel is the TDD pair of a connectionless downlink or a dummy bearer;
- b) the PT selected a free channel.

Case a)

- The transmission sequences are different for C/L uplink services using one or two transmissions:

1) One transmission:

- * the PT sends the D-field in an arbitrarily chosen frame.

2) Two transmissions:

- * the PT sends the first D-field in an arbitrarily chosen even numbered frame, and the second D-field on the same channel in the next TDMA frame.

NOTE 1: The uplink channel on the TDD pair of a dummy or C/L downlink bearer is not checked prior to transmission.

NOTE 2: Controlled by the higher layers retransmissions of the same C/L uplink data may occur. To prevent continuous collisions (e.g. two PTs start transmission in the same TDMA frame and use the same retransmission algorithm in their higher layers), the MAC layer should choose a random delay between receiving a MAC-UP_CON.Req primitive and the beginning of the first transmission.

Case b)

- After selecting the channel (see subclause 11.4) the PT sends the first D-field in time with the primary receiver scan of the FT;
- if the connectionless uplink service consists of two transmissions the PT sends the second D-field on the same channel in the next TDMA frame.

9.2.3.4 FT procedure

The FT may receive a C/L uplink transmission either on the TDD half of its dummy or connectionless downlink bearer, or by scanning for PT first transmissions. When receiving a PT's C/L uplink transmission marked as "first PP transmission" (see subclause 7.1.2) with correct A-field CRC and containing the FT's PMID, the FT shall install a CBC to process the C/L uplink service.

The FT shall decide upon the coding of the M_T tail message (see subclause 7.2.5.6) whether the PT uses a single transmission uplink service or a double transmission uplink service. If a double transmission uplink service is in progress the FT's CBC shall receive the second transmission in the next TDMA frame on the same connectionless uplink bearer.

If all data related to the C/L uplink service has been received correctly, i.e. with correct CRCs, the CMC issues a MAC-UP_CON.Ind primitive to the DLC with the SDU containing received CLF or CLS data.

9.3 Non-continuous broadcast procedure

A-field and B-field procedures exist which allow PTs to acquire more Q-channel information and as a further BMC service to request a new dummy bearer.

9.3.1 Request for specific Q-channel information

A PT may acquire extended system information upon request. The procedure is initiated by the PT's LLME (see subclause 11.2.1).

9.3.1.1 A-field procedure

PT procedure:

The PT creates two D-fields to be transmitted by its physical layer. The B-field of both transmissions may be filled in any manner or need not even be transmitted at all.

The A-field of the first D-field contains the "first PT transmission" TA bits, FMID, PMID, and a byte identifying the service (extended system information; see subclause 7.2.5.6).

The A-field of the second D-field contains the M_T tail TA bits and the request in the A-field tail (refer to subclause 7.2.5.10).

The PT selects a channel according to the rules for duplex bearers (see subclause 11.4) and sends the first D-field in time with the primary receiver scan of the FT. The PT transmits the second D-field on the same channel in the next TDMA frame.

The PT then listens to the TDD pair of the bearer until a reply is received or time-out expires (T206, see subclause 11.2.2).

FT procedure:

An FT receiving an extended system information request issues the request to the LLME (see subclause 11.2.2). If the LLME replies the FT creates two D-fields to be transmitted. The B-field of both transmissions may be filled in any manner or need not even be transmitted at all.

The A-field header of both transmissions use the M_T tail TA bits.

The first A-field tail contains FMID, PMID, and a byte identifying the service (extended system information; see subclause 7.2.5.6).

The second A-field tail contains the FT response (refer to subclause 7.2.5.10).

The RFP selects the TDD pair of that channel on which the request was received and transmits the D-fields in two successive frames.

9.3.1.2 B-field procedure

PT procedure:

The PT creates one single D-field for the request. This D-field is marked as a "first PT transmission" in the A-field header. The A-field tail contains a special M $\bar{\top}$ tail identifying the transmission as part of the extended system information service. The B-field contains the request(s) (see subclause 7.3.6).

The PT selects a free channel according to the rules for duplex bearers (see subclause 11.4.2) and transmits the D-field in time with the primary receiver scan of the FT. The PT then scans the TDD pair of the bearer until a reply is received or time-out expires (T206, see subclause 11.2.2). A reply is marked with the same M $\bar{\top}$ tail as used for the request. Replies are delivered to the LLME (see subclause 11.2.1).

FT procedure:

An FT receiving a extended system information request issues the request to the LLME (see subclause 11.2.2). If the LLME replies the FT creates one D-field with the A-field containing an M $\bar{\top}$ tail. This tail identifies the D-field as part of the extended system information service (see subclause 7.2.5.6). The B-field contains the response from the LLME.

The RFP selects the TDD pair of that channel on which the request was received and transmits the D-field once on this channel.

9.3.2 Request for a new dummy bearer

A PT may request the continuous BMC service on a new dummy bearer. The PT, therefore, selects a free channel and prepares one single D-field. The D-field contains an A-field with an M $\bar{\top}$ tail identifying the service (see subclause 7.2.5.6). The D-field is marked as "first PT transmission" (see subclause 7.1.2). The B-field may be filled in any manner or need not even be transmitted at all. The PT transmits the D-field in time with the primary receiver scan of the FT on the selected channel.

The FT may ignore the PT's request or install the dummy bearer on the TDD half of that channel on which the request was received. A PT shall not attempt to change the dummy bearer position at an RFP after two successive unsuccessful attempts to this RFP.

10 Connection oriented service procedures

10.1 Overview

The connection oriented procedures use two peer-to-peer associations, connections and bearers. A connection is the association that is visible to the DLC layer, and each connection uses the services of one or more bearers as described in subclause 5.6.

The procedures are described in the following groups:

Connection control procedures:

- connection setup (subclause 10.2);
- connection modification (subclause 10.3);
- connection release (subclause 10.4).

Bearer control procedures:

- bearer setup (subclause 10.5);
- bearer handover (subclause 10.6);
- bearer release (subclause 10.7).

Data transfer (subclause 10.8):

The procedures are written in the style of a time sequence diagram, with the PT and FT procedures interlaced to represent the order of events. The steps are numbered as a single series, and the varied outcomes are described with a series of lettered substeps (3a, 3b etc).

10.2 C/O connection setup

Connection setup is the first phase of a connection orientated MAC service and the first phase of a connection handover. The phrase "Connection_Established" is defined to mean completion of setup at the MAC layer.

Connection setup can be originated from either side. These directions are defined as follows:

- MAC PT_originated;
- MAC FT_originated.

All setup attempts for connection handover are PT_originated.

10.2.1 General

There are three connection setup processes:

- basic connection setup process, PT_originated;
- normal connection setup process, PT_originated;
- fast connection setup process, FT_originated.

The basic setup process is used to set up a basic connection. The normal and fast setup processes create advanced connections (see subclause 5.6).

10.2.2 Initiation of a basic and a normal connection setup

A basic or normal setup may be initiated by a network layer call that originates from either the PT or FT as detailed in the following overview:

FT_originated call:

- FT higher layer sends a paging command to the PT higher layer;
- if this page is received successfully, the PT higher layer initiates a connection setup by issuing a MAC-CON.Reg primitive to the PT MAC layer.

PT_originated call:

- the PT higher layer initiates a connection setup by issuing a MAC-CON.Reg primitive to the PT MAC layer.

10.2.3 Initiation of a fast connection setup

FT_originated call only:

- the FT DLC initiates a connection setup without any prior paging by issuing a MAC-CON.Reg primitive to the MAC layer. This primitive is addressed to only one RFP and the address of the RFP shall be known in advance.

10.2.4 Connection setup procedure description

10.2.4.1 Creation of MBCs

Calling side:

- a connection setup starts with the initiation process, either the DLC in the PT (basic and normal setup) or the DLC in the FT (fast setup) issues a MAC-CON.Reg primitive to its MAC.

This primitive includes a MAC Connection Endpoint Identifier (MCEI) which is used to identify all further primitives related to this connection.

For fast connection setup the MAC-CON.Reg primitive shall include the Radio fixed Part Number (RPN) to identify the RFP to which the PT is registered, and the calling address which is the PMID. If the wanted RFP cannot be addressed by the MBC the MAC issues a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive to the DLC and releases the MBC entity.

If a connection is requested to perform a connection handover the MAC-CON.Reg primitive shall include the new and the old MCEI.

In addition, the MAC-CON.Reg primitive shall include the necessary parameters to identify the wanted service. After receiving a paging command the full service description is not always known by the PTs. Then the service has type "unknown".

If the MAC cannot establish a connection (e.g. an advanced connection is needed and the FT only supports basic connections) or the MAC does not support the wanted service (e.g. the MAC only knows basic connections and a data service is wanted) the MAC issues a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive to the DLC and releases the MBC ending the procedure.

The MBC asks the LLME for allowance to set up the connection between the FT (as identified by its ARI) and the PT (as identified by its PMID). If a single bearer I_N_minimum_delay service is wanted and no C_F-channel is required the MBC may ask to establish a basic connection, otherwise the MBC asks for an advanced connection (see subclause 5.6). If the new connection is for connection handover the MBC also issues the MCEI of the old connection to the LLME.

Whenever an MBC is allowed to establish an advanced connection the LLME assigns the Exchanged Connection Number (ECN) to the MBC.

The LLME may forbid the establishment of the desired connection (e.g. there already exists a basic connection, no further ECNs available). If a basic connection was requested by the MBC and then prohibited by the LLME, the MBC may reattempt by asking for an advanced connection.

If it is not allowed to set up the wanted connection the MAC issues a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive to the DLC indicating the reason, and releases the MBC.

If the MBC is allowed to set up the connection the MAC reports the connection type (basic or advanced) with the MAC-CON.Cfm primitive to the DLC after the successful setup of the first bearer.

NOTE 1: In the case of a successful connection setup there exists a common identification for the connection known at both, PT and FT. It consists of ARI + PMID (+ ECN) where the ECN only appears for advanced connections. For advanced connections this identification is always unique within the PT and the FT. For basic connections a duplication may occur only during connection handover.

NOTE 2: It is assumed that the PMID does not change during one connection (e.g. from an arbitrary PMID to a PMID derived from the assigned individual TPUI (see subclause 11.7.2)).

The first task of the calling side's MBC is to invoke the creation of a new MBC at the called side. To allow the necessary radio transmissions at least one bearer controlled by a TBC shall exist. For setting up new bearers the MBC chooses one of the bearer setup procedures. The choice depends on the requested service (see subclauses 10.2.4.2 and 10.2.4.3).

Higher layer control during connection setup:

- at the calling side the MAC may enable transmissions of higher layer control even in the first transmission. After receiving the MAC-CON.Req primitive the MAC may ask immediately for higher layer control segments with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive (refer to subclause 8.4.3).

Called side:

- on the called side a new TBC is created by receiving a "bearer_request" message including both a calling address and its own address (FMID and PMID) on the scanned physical channel. The message type also contains the information if the new bearer belongs to a basic or an advanced connection.

The TBC has then to receive all necessary parameters to identify an MBC. The MBC is fully identified after:

- a) receiving with the "bearer_request" message either an access request or a handover request, including the calling address (FMID or PMID) and defining the connection type (advanced or basic); and
- b) for advanced connections only, receiving an ECN; and
- c) for basic connections and only in case of a handover request, an indication if bearer or connection handover is wanted.

NOTE 3: The parameters are not always known after the first received message, e.g. for setup procedures using the advanced connection control M_T message set, the conditions are fulfilled after receiving two messages, the "bearer_request" message and the "attributes_request" message (see subclause 10.5.1.2.1).

The TBC issues PMID, ARI and for an advanced connection also the ECN to the LLME and indicates the purpose of the wanted connection (bearer/connection handover or new connection).

NOTE 4: For an FT initiated bearer setup the calling address is the FMID. But the PT has to be locked to the calling RFP and, therefore, the PT knows the FT's ARI.

The LLME can now decide:

- a) to release the TBC;
- b) to connect the TBC to an existing MBC; or
- c) to create a new MBC for connecting the TBC.

If a new MBC is needed the LLME requests the MAC to create a new MBC and assigns a MCEI to this MBC. The creation of a new MBC is reported to the DLC by issuing a MAC-CON.Ind primitive after the first successful bearer setup. This primitive informs the DLC if a basic or an advanced connection is set up, and describes the wanted service type.

NOTE 5: The wanted service may be of type "unknown" at this moment.

Higher layer control during connection setup:

- the called side may enable transmission of higher layer control after issuing the MAC-CON.Ind primitive. The MAC has to ask for this higher layer control with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive (refer to subclause 8.4.3).

10.2.4.2 Establishment of a single bearer duplex connection of a known service type

This procedure is applied for all basic connections and for some advanced connections. Advanced connections are established with this procedure provided that:

- a) the MAC-CON.REQ primitive at the initiating side contained the full MAC layer service description; and
- b) the connection is a single bearer connection.

For a single bearer connection the duplex bearer setup is initiated by:

- a) the PT, for basic and normal connection setup;
- b) the FT, for fast connection setup.

With the creation of the MBC on the initiating side a connection setup timer (T200, see Annex A) is started. A successful connection setup shall be completed before this timer expires. Otherwise the connection setup fails.

The MBC of the initiating side shall have knowledge of at least one available physical channel. The MBC shall also know the address (FMID or PMID) of the called part. The MBC creates a TBC and issues the called address (FMID/PMID) and the physical channel description to the new TBC. The MBC also indicates if the wanted bearer is used for bearer handover, connection handover or for a new MAC connection and which single bearer setup procedure has to be used. For advanced single bearer connections the logical bearer number of the only bearer shall be set to 15 (= "1111"). The MBC issues the LBN and the ECN to the TBC.

To establish the bearer the TBC uses one of the following procedures:

- a) the basic bearer setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.1) for a basic connection setup;
- b) the PT initiated A-field advanced single bearer setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.2.1) or the PT initiated B-field advanced single bearer setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.3.1) for a normal connection setup;
- c) the FT initiated B-field advanced single bearer setup (subclause 10.5.1.3.2) for fast connection setup.

At the end of a setup procedure a TBC will report to the MBC either:

- "bearer_established" or "bearer_setup_failed", indicating the reason.

NOTE 1: At the destination side these messages only occur if a bearer setup attempt was detected and a new MBC was created.

If a bearer setup attempt failed the TBC is released (see bearer setup procedures). The calling MBC can reattempt with the same procedure up to N200 (see Annex A) times, subject to using a new available channel each time and/or accessing a new RFP (see subclause 11.4.2). Each reattempt is reported to the DLC with a MAC-RES_DLC.Ind primitive.

NOTE 2: This reporting of reattempts is necessary to support overlapped setup, whereby setup of the higher layers occurs at the same time as setup of the MAC layer.

Explanation: The MAC forgets acknowledged higher layer data and so this data cannot be repeated in a MAC bearer setup reattempt. The primitive, therefore, tells the higher layers that a new connection setup was started automatically. Higher layers shall restart their overlapped procedures, or shall release the MAC setup with a MAC-DIS.Req primitive.

If the setup attempt fails N200 + 1 times or the connection setup time-out (T200) expires, the initiating MAC reports "setup_failure" to its DLC, using a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive with the reason and releases the MBC. This event is also reported to the LLME.

At the called side it is not always possible to recognise how often setup attempts fail. Here the MBC is always released when "bearer_setup_failed" was recognised (see single bearer setup procedures) or by a time-out (e.g. T200 or T201). The connection setup timer (T200) for a new MBC shall be started at creation of the MBC. Release of an MBC at the called side is always reported to the LLME, and to its DLC with a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive provided that a MAC-CON.Ind primitive was issued before.

NOTE 3: This condition may occur if a bearer setup was successful at the called side but failed at the calling side. Here the calling side may reattempt to setup a bearer.

An MBC assumes that a bearer setup was successful when the TBC reported "bearer_established".

When the TBC at the called side reports "bearer_established" the MBC knows all necessary MAC parameters for the wanted service. If the MAC does not support the wanted service it will proceed with a connection release procedure and should indicate the reason (see subclause 10.4).

If the MAC supports the service the connection setup for a single bearer connection is completed. Immediately after the TBC reported "bearer_established" the MAC reports "connection_established" plus service parameters with a MAC-CON.Ind primitive at the called side or with a MAC-CON.Cfm primitive at the initiating side to the DLC. All following transmissions may contain valid I-channel data and the MAC uses the appropriate multiplex for the wanted service.

10.2.4.3 Establishment of multi-bearer connections and connections needing service negotiation

Overview:

The following service negotiation procedures shall be used to establish all asymmetric connections, and shall also be used for symmetric multi-bearer connections.

The procedure shall also be applied for connections with service type "unknown".

Channel list messages shall be used for the establishment of asymmetric connections as defined in subclause 10.5.1.4. Channel list messages should be used for all multibearer connection establishment.

During a multi-bearer connection establishment, the first pilot (duplex) bearer within one connection shall be set up by the initiating side (see subclause 10.2.2 and subclause 10.2.3). Either of the two MBCs may be the master for all subsequent bearer establishment in the sense that this MBC initiates all of the remaining bearer setups.

The multi-bearer connection establishment procedure starts with the setting up of one duplex bearer, the "pilot channel". This allows the service type to become known, (if it was unknown), and initial channel list messages to be exchanged.

NOTE 1: Channel list messages and procedures are described in subclause 10.5.2.

The pilot (duplex) bearer setup is initiated by:

- the PT, for normal connection setup;
- the FT, for fast connection setup.

Procedure description:

The receipt of a MAC-CON.Reg primitive causes the creation of the MBC on the initiating side and the starting of a connection setup timer (T200). A successful connection setup shall be completed before this timer expires. Otherwise the connection setup fails and any bearers that have been set up are released.

The MBC of the initiating side shall have knowledge of at least one available physical channel. The MBC shall also know the address (FMID or PMID) of the called part. The MBC creates a TBC and issues the called address (FMID/PMID) and the physical channel description to the new TBC. The MBC also indicates if the wanted pilot bearer is used for connection handover or for a new connection. For the pilot bearer the MBC sets the logical bearer number to 15 (= "1111") and issues the LBN and the ECN to the TBC.

To establish the bearer the TBC uses one of the following procedures:

- the PT initiated A-field advanced single bearer setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.2.1) or the PT initiated B-field advanced single bearer setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.3.1) for a normal connection setup;
- the FT initiated B-field advanced single bearer setup (subclause 10.5.1.3.2) for fast connection setup.

At the end of a setup procedure a TBC will report to the MBC either:

- "bearer_established"; or
- "bearer_setup_failed", indicating the reason.

NOTE 2: At the destination side these messages only occur if a bearer setup attempt was detected and a new MBC was created.

If a bearer setup attempt failed the TBC is released (see bearer setup procedures) and the calling MBC can reattempt with the same procedure up to N200 (see Annex A) times, subject to using a new available channel each time and/or accessing a new RFP (see subclause 11.4.2). Each reattempt is reported to the DLC with a MAC-RES_DLC.Ind primitive.

NOTE 3: This reporting of reattempts is necessary to support overlapped setup, whereby setup of the higher layers occurs at the same time as setup of the MAC layer.

Explanation: The MAC forgets acknowledged higher layer data and so this data cannot be repeated in a MAC bearer setup reattempt. The primitive, therefore, tells the higher layers that a new connection setup was started automatically. Higher layers shall restart their overlapped procedures, or shall release the MAC setup with a MAC-DIS.Req primitive.

If the setup attempt fails N200 + 1 times or the connection setup time-out expires (T200) the initiating MAC reports "setup_failure" to the DLC, using a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive with the reason set and releases the MBC. This event is also reported to the LLME.

At the called side it is not always possible to recognise how often setup attempts fail. Here the MBC is always released when "bearer_setup_failed" was recognised (see single bearer setup procedures) or by a time-out (e.g. T200 or T201). The setup timer (T200) for a new MBC shall be started at the creation of the MBC. A release of an MBC is always reported to the LLME, and to the DLC with a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive provided that a MAC-CON.Ind primitive was issued before.

An MBC assumes that a bearer setup was successful when the TBC reported "bearer_established".

When the TBC at the called side reports "bearer_established" the called MBC may know all the necessary MAC parameters for the wanted service. If the service is defined and the called MAC does not support this service it will proceed with a connection release procedure and should indicate the reason (see subclause 10.4). Otherwise the MBC issues a MAC-CON.Ind primitive to the DLC.

The MBC on the initiating side issues a MAC-CON.Cfm primitive to the DLC after the TBC reported "bearer_established".

If the service is not fully defined, e.g. the service type is "unknown" or the number of bearers is undefined, the connection is in a pending state until the DLC on either side issues a MAC-MOD.Req primitive that shall contain all necessary parameters.

NOTE 4: For PT initiated calls the MAC-MOD.Req primitive may be issued at the same time as the MAC-CON.Req primitive.

NOTE 5: A MAC-MOD.Req primitive is needed for all multibearer connections.

The MBC at the side where the MAC-MOD.Req primitive was issued shall release the connection when the wanted service is not able to be supported. Otherwise the MBC sends repeatedly the appropriate attributes and/or bandwidth request messages, until these messages are confirmed or a connection release is recognised. If both messages are needed, the bandwidth request message shall not precede the attribute request message.

When negotiating the bandwidth the requesting side shall propose the wanted bandwidth. The bandwidth confirm message, however, may contain the same minimum and target number of bearers or a reduced number of bearers. The negotiated bandwidth is given by the numbers in the confirm message. If the bandwidths in the request and confirm message are different the MBC at the initiating side shall issue a MAC-BW.Ind primitive to the DLC. When the offered bandwidth is sufficient for the service the DLC shall reply with a MAC-BW.Res primitive, otherwise with MAC-DIS.Req primitive. The latter case shall cause a connection release.

MAC-MOD Ind and Cfm shall not be issued until the connection is fully established.

Now the two MBC functions have the same, complete, knowledge of the connection that is required. Further progress depends upon the service type :

- symmetric connection;
- fully asymmetric uplink connection; or
- fully asymmetric downlink connection.

10.2.4.3.1 Symmetric connection

A symmetric connection is one that offers a symmetric I-channel service to the DLC. The eventual bandwidth and service type for the direction PP to FP and FP to PP are identical. A symmetric connection shall only use duplex bearers.

If the connection is a single bearer connection (previously of type "unknown"), this is now established and MAC-MOD.Ind and MAC-MOD.Cfm primitives are issued.

Otherwise this is a multibearer connection, and all following bearer set ups shall be PT initiated. The PT shall "add" duplex bearers using the A-Field advanced or B-Field single bearer setup procedures (see subclauses 10.5.1.2.1 and 10.5.1.3.1). The channel list procedures described in subclause 10.5.2 should be used to decrease the connection establishment time by negotiating changes to the receiver scanning patterns at the receiving side.

10.2.4.3.2 Fully asymmetric uplink connection

A fully asymmetric uplink connection is one that offers an asymmetric I-channel service to the DLC. The eventual bandwidth and service type are only defined for the direction PP to FP (there is no I-channel service in the direction FP to PP). A fully asymmetric uplink connection shall use a mixture of double simplex and duplex bearers.

For all subsequent double simplex bearer setups the PT is the T-side. The double simplex setup procedure is described in subclause 10.5.1.4.

The number of duplex bearers shall be determined by the MBC in the PT, and at least one duplex bearer shall be maintained at all times. The PT may add duplex bearers by using the procedures defined in subclauses 10.5.1.2.1 or 10.5.1.3.1. For setting up further duplex bearers the channel list procedures (refer to subclause 10.5.2) should be used in order to decrease the connection establishment time.

10.2.4.3.3 Fully asymmetric downlink connection

A fully asymmetric downlink connection is one that offers an asymmetric I-channel service to the DLC. The eventual bandwidth and service type are only defined for the direction FP to PP (there is no I-channel service in the direction PP to FP). A fully asymmetric downlink connection shall use a mixture of double simplex and duplex bearers.

For all subsequent double simplex bearer setups the FT is the T-side. The double simplex setup procedure is described in subclause 10.5.1.4.

The number of duplex bearers shall be determined by the MBC in the FT, and at least one duplex bearer shall be maintained at all times. The FT may add duplex bearers by using the procedures defined in subclauses 10.5.1.2.2 or 10.5.1.3.2. For setting up further duplex bearers the channel list procedures (refer to subclause 10.5.2) should be used in order to decrease the connection establishment time.

10.2.4.3.4 Connection established

When the number of established bearers equals the "minimum" parameter the MBC entities shall issue the appropriate MAC-MOD primitive (ind or cfm) to report "connection_established". The MBCs shall keep attempting to obtain the "target" number of bearers until the connection setup timer (T200) expires, and may try to obtain this number of bearers afterwards.

If the connection set up timer expires at either side before the "minimum" number of bearers are established, a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive is issued containing "connection_establishment_failure" and all established bearers are released. The release of the bearers shall cause the other side to issue a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive.

All transmissions following the MAC-MOD.Ind or MAC-MOD.Cfm primitive respectively may contain valid I-channel data and the MAC shall use the appropriate multiplex for the wanted service.

10.3 C/O connection modification

The DLC on either side may initiate a connection modification of an advanced connection by issuing a MAC-MOD.Reg primitive.

Modifications to existing connections are only allowed to change the bandwidth, i.e. the number of required bearers.

- NOTE 1: A bandwidth change may switch a single bearer connection to a multibearer connection and vice versa.
- NOTE 2: A bandwidth change may switch an asymmetric connection to a symmetric connection and vice versa or may change the direction of an asymmetric connection.
- NOTE 3: The transmission direction of double simplex bearers may be switched by using the fast release procedure (subclause 10.7.2.3). Switching a bearer from duplex to double simplex and vice versa is prohibited.
- NOTE 4: Some bandwidth change requests may cause ambiguous situations of the MAC I-channel data flow, e.g:
- the wanted minimum number of simplex bearers in one direction is above the actual number of established bearers, and, therefore, the MAC cannot provide the new service instantaneously;
 - sequencing of data segments in I_N_normal_delay and I_P_error_detection services might fail during the establishment of new bearers.
- NOTE 5: In multibearer connections the sequencing of I-channel data segments for I_N_normal_delay and I_P_error_detection services can only be guaranteed by the MAC layer if the minimum number of needed bearers equals the target number of bearers. Adding or releasing bearers during a call may cause ambiguous situations (see subclauses 8.4.3 and 10.8.3.2).

Whenever the bandwidth change might cause ambiguity for the data service it is assumed that the side which invokes the connection modification has already negotiated the modification at a higher layer. In these cases, the receiving DLC should ignore I-channel data delivered before receiving a MAC-MOD.Ind or Cfm primitive.

The MBC at the initiating side sends repeatedly the appropriate bandwidth request message (A-field or B-field) until a bandwidth confirm message is received or a connection release is recognised. The bandwidth confirm message may contain the same minimum and target number of bearers or reduced number of bearers. The negotiated bandwidth is given by the numbers in the confirm message. If the bandwidths in the request and confirm message are different the MBC at the initiating side shall issue a MAC-BW.Ind primitive to the DLC. When the offered bandwidth is sufficient for the service, the DLC shall reply with a MAC-BW.Res primitive, otherwise with a MAC-DIS.Reg primitive.

After this negotiation the agreed bandwidth for both directions may be the same (e.g. the far end does not allow a change and the bandwidth is still sufficient). For this case the procedure ends.

To modify the connection according to the negotiated new bandwidth one of the MBC is the master in the sense that only this MBCs may initiate new bearer setups. If the modified connection is symmetric or a

fully asymmetric uplink, the PT is the master. For fully asymmetric downlink connections the FT is the master.

The only slave function is to release all existing double simplex bearers in direction the slave to master. Independently for each double simplex bearer, the slave shall choose either the unacknowledged release procedure or the fast release procedure. The fast release procedure allows to setup immediately a new double simplex bearer on the same physical channels but in the reverse direction.

First the master releases bearers, such that in neither direction the established number of bearers remains above the target number.

If in both directions the number of surviving bearers is equal to or greater than the minimum number of bearers, both MBCs, issue a MAC-MOD primitive (Ind or Cfm) to indicate the new available bandwidth. The masters MBC may still try to setup the target number of bearers.

If in either direction the number of surviving bearers is less than the minimum required bearers the connection modification timer (T211) is started and the master tries to setup the required number of bearers using the procedures in subclause 10.2.4.3.1 through subclause 10.2.4.3.3. If the minimum number of bearers is not established until the connection modification timer expires, the MBCs send a MAC-DIS.Ind primitive to the DLC. As a consequence the connection is released.

The modification is successfully completed when the minimum number of bearers is established before the modification timeout expires. This event is reported to the DLC on both sides with a MAC-MOD primitive (Ind or Cfm). The master's MBC may still try to achieve the target number of bearers even after the connection timeout expires (T211).

10.4 C/O connection release

10.4.1 General

Connection release is the last phase of a connection orientated MAC service. During connection release an existing MBC will be released. This action is reported to the LLME and to the DLC if necessary.

Several events can cause a release of an established connection:

- a) the DLC of either side issues a MAC-DIS.Req primitive to the MBC;
- b) during connection setup, an MBC was created for a service which is not provided by the MAC (e.g. IP data service requested on an FT which supports only IN services);
- c) due to a bearer release, a TBC reports "connection_release" to the MBC (i.e. in the received RELEASE message the reason was set to "connection_release");
- d) as a result of bearer release, no TBC controlling a duplex bearer exists;
- e) due to a bearer release, the MBC cannot maintain the minimum acceptable service.

Event a) describes the initiation of a normal connection release. The DLC of either side decides to release the connection. As a consequence, one of the event c), d) or e) will cause a connection release at the opposite side.

During connection setup, event d) does not normally cause a connection release at the calling side. Before the MAC-CON.Cfm primitive is issued to the DLC the event d) only causes a connection release when the TBC reports that the MAC service cannot be provided to the MBC. Without this report the MBC may reattempt the bearer setup (see subclause 10.2.4).

Events d) and e) may occur at any time due to a bearer failure.

NOTE: A bearer release will be the consequence if a bearer fails.

10.4.2 Procedure description

If an MBC received a MAC-DIS.Reg primitive from its DLC the MBC initiates a bearer release on all TBCs and disconnects the TBCs. The MAC releases the MBC and reports this event to the LLME.

During connection setup, one of the MBCs may be asked to provide a service that cannot be provided by its MAC layer. In this case that MBC initiates bearer release at all TBCs and then disconnects these TBCs. A MAC Layer issues a MAC-DIS.Ind if it has received a MAC-CON.Reg or already issued a MAC-CON.Ind. The MAC releases the MBC and reports this event to the LLME.

A TBC may report bearer released to the MBC for several reasons, e.g. bearer failed due to a timeout or release message received. The MBC disconnects this TBC and tests if:

- the last duplex bearer has been released;
- the wanted service cannot be provided further;
- the TBC indicated a connection release.

The occurrence of at least one of these events will normally cause a connection release (exception see subclause 10.4.1, comment to event d)). The MBC initiates a bearer release on all remaining TBCs and disconnects the TBCs. A MAC layer issues a MAC-DIS.Ind if it has received a MAC-CON.Reg or already issued a MAC-CON.Ind. The MAC releases the MBC and reports this event to the LLME.

10.5 C/O bearer setup

10.5.1 Single bearer setup procedures

In the following procedures, the set of messages used to switch the bearer state to Bearer_Established after the confirm message has been received are called the "other" messages. The "other" messages comprises all messages except release.

10.5.1.1 Basic bearer setup procedure

Predicates:

- a) PT is in frame and multiframe synchronism with a cluster. The PT has already received the RFPI of at least one RFP within this cluster and knows the RFP's receiver scanning sequence;
- b) an MBC has been created in the PT's MAC to control a connection. The MBC has knowledge of at least one available channel and knows the FMID of the desired RFP;
- c) the PT's MBC has created a new TBC in order to set up a new bearer. The MBC has issued the PMID, FMID and the physical channel identification to the TBC. The MBC indicated if the wanted bearer is to be used for a bearer handover or a new connection, and whether the connection is "normal" or a "handover".

Procedure Description:

This procedure is always PT initiated and based on the exchange of:

- a "bearer_request" message from PT to FT; followed by
- a "bearer_confirm" message from FT to PT; followed by
- an "other" message from PT to FT; followed by
- an "other" message from FT to PT.

The "bearer_request" message is one of the following messages defined in subclause 7.2.5.2:

- the ACCESS_REQUEST message;
- the BEARER_HANDOVER_REQUEST message;
- the CONNECTION_HANDOVER_REQUEST message.

The "bearer_confirm" message is:

- the BEARER_CONFIRM message from subclause 7.2.5.2.

The messages are carried in the tail of the A-field. The bearer request and bearer confirm messages are M_T messages of the basic connection control message set. With these messages the FT and PT exchange their MAC identities. Between request and confirm the exchange of some WAIT messages (see subclause 7.2.5.2) is allowed. The FMID contained in the WAIT and the "bearer_confirm" messages shall be the same as that in the "bearer_request" message. The "other" message is used to switch the bearer state at the receiving end to Bearer_Established.

The bearer request message and the first response (confirm or WAIT message) from the called side may appear in any frame, over-riding the rules of the T-Mux algorithm described in subclause 6.2.2.1. This first response of the called side shall occur in the TDMA half frame following the successful reception of the request message. Until the PT transmits the "other" message in a successful bearer setup, the MAC control messages following the request shall occupy all allowed tails for M_T. The T-Mux algorithm defines which tails are allowed. The two "other" messages are any A-field messages transmitted in successive TDMA half frames following that TDMA half frame in which the PT received the bearer confirm message.

Before Bearer_Established, the B-field need not contain valid I-channel data. If no I-channel data is available, it is recommended that all bits in the B-field are set to "0".

Independent of the current encryption mode of the connection (enabled or disabled) bearer setup always starts in "clear" (encryption disabled). Transmissions on the new bearer are switched to the current encryption mode of the connection immediately after the second "other" message was transmitted/received.

Procedure:

1 PT transmits one "bearer_request" at the right time on a given available channel (selection defined in subclause 11.4.2) to one of its known RFPs using the "first PT transmission" header code given in subclause 7.1.2;

2 FT receives "bearer_request" error free (see NOTE 2) with correct FMID and creates a new TBC else procedure ends (bearer setup failed, no TBC = no further transmissions).

NOTE 1: It is assumed that an FT which does not have the capacity to create a new TBC (e.g. simple residential system, call in progress, no bearer or connection handover capability) is not listening to bearer request messages and, therefore, cannot receive this message. If the MBC can create a new TBC this FMID check has to be done within one TDMA half frame = 5 ms.

3 FT's TBC asks LLME for an MBC identified by (ARI + PMID) to be connected. If the FT cannot provide an MBC the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 3 below).

.....

WHILE (FT not ready to transmit "bearer_confirm") DO BEGIN

- a) FT sends WAIT;
- b) If the PT receives WAIT error free:
then the PT responds with WAIT;
else procedure ends (see NOTE 4 below).
- c) If the FT receives WAIT message error free:
then continue;
else procedure ends with FT initiating bearer release (bearer setup failed).

END

.....

- 4 FT sends "bearer_confirm".
- 5 If the PT receives "bearer_confirm" error free:
then the PT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 5 below);
else the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 4 below).
- 6 If the FT receives "other" with errors or a release:
then the FT initiates bearer release (bearer setup failed),
else the TBC reports "bearer_established" to the MBC, and the FT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 5 below).
- 7 If the PT receives "other" with errors or a release:
then the PT initiates bearer release (bearer setup failed);
else the TBC reports "bearer_established" to the MBC.

NOTE 2: Receiving without error means, A-field and X-field CRC hold and message is recognised (message type decoded).

NOTE 3: The FT should release the TBC with a bearer release procedure.

NOTE 4: If WAIT messages were received before, the PT should release the TBC by using a bearer release procedure. Otherwise the TBC shall stop transmissions and the PT should release the TBC.

NOTE 5: "Immediately" means, in the TDMA half frame following the transmission of the "bearer_confirm" message (step 5 above) or of the first "other" message (step 6 above).

10.5.1.2 A-field advanced single bearer setup procedure

The A-field advanced single bearer setup procedure may be initiated from either side, PT or FT.

10.5.1.2.1 PT initiated

Predicates:

- a) PT is in frame and multiframe synchronism with a cluster. The PT has already learned the RFPI of at least one RFP within this cluster and knows the RFP's receiver scanning sequence;
- b) an MBC has been created in the PT's MAC to control a connection. The MBC has knowledge of at least one available channel and knows the FMID of the wanted RFP;
- c) the PT's MBC has created a new TBC in order to set up a new bearer. The MBC has issued the PMID, FMID, ECN, the channel identification and a LBN to the TBC. The MBC indicated if the wanted bearer is to be used for a bearer handover or a new connection, and whether the connection is "normal" or a "handover".

Procedure description:

This procedure is based on the exchange of:

- a "bearer_request" message from PT to FT; followed by
- a "bearer_confirm" message from FT to PT; followed by
- an "attributes_request" message from PT to FT; followed by
- an "attributes_confirm" message from FT to PT; followed by
- an "other" message from PT to FT; followed by
- an "other" message from FT to PT.

The "bearer_request" message is one of the following messages defined in subclause 7.2.5.3:

- the ACCESS_REQUEST message;
- the BEARER_HANDOVER_REQUEST message;
- the CONNECTION_HANDOVER_REQUEST message;

The "bearer_confirm" message is:

- the BEARER_CONFIRM message of subclause 7.2.5.3.

The "attributes_request" message is:

- the ATTRIBUTES_T message (subclause 7.2.5.3). The Request/Confirm (R/C) bit is set to 0.

The "attributes_confirm" message is:

- the ATTRIBUTES_T message (subclause 7.2.5.3). The Request/Confirm (R/C) bit is set to 1.

NOTE 1: All service parameters in the ATTRIB_T messages used as the "attributes_request" and "attributes_confirm" messages shall be the same. The only difference is the setting of the R/C bit.

The messages are carried in the tail of the A-field. Except for the "other" message all messages are M_T messages of the advanced control message set. With the M_T messages the FT and PT exchange their MAC identities and agree the service type. Between the needed setup messages the exchange of some WAIT messages (see subclause 7.2.5.3) is allowed. The FMID contained in the WAIT and the "bearer_confirm" messages shall be the same as that in the "bearer_request" message. The "other" message is used to switch the bearer state at the receiving end to Bearer_Established.

The bearer request message and the first response (confirm or WAIT message) from the called side may appear in any frame, overriding the rules of the T-Mux algorithm described in subclause 6.2.2.1. This first response of the called side shall occur in the TDMA half frame following the successful reception of the request message. Until the PT transmits the "other" message in a successful bearer setup, the MAC control messages following the request shall occupy all allowed tails for M_T . The T-Mux algorithm defines which tails are allowed. The "other" messages are any A-field messages transmitted in successive TDMA half frames following that half frame in which the PT received the bearer confirm message.

Before Bearer_Established, the B-field need not contain valid I-channel data. If the U-type multiplex is used during setup and no valid I-channel data is available, it is recommended that all bits in the B-field are set to "0". In the first transmission the PT may send a setup request also in the B-field. In this case the FT can choose to proceed with an A-field bearer setup (this procedure) or a B-field setup (see subclause 10.5.1.3).

Independent of the current encryption mode of the connection (enabled or disabled) bearer setup starts always in "clear" (encryption disabled). Transmissions on the new bearer are switched to the current encryption mode of the connection immediately after the second "other" message was transmitted/received.

Procedure:

- 1 PT transmits one "bearer_request" at the right time on a given available channel (selection defined in subclause 11.4.2) to one of its known RFPs using the "first PT transmission" header code given in subclause 7.1.2;
- 2 FT receives "bearer_request" error free (see NOTE 2 below) with correct FMID and creates new TBC else procedure ends (bearer setup failed, no TBC = no transmissions).

NOTE 2: It is assumed that an FT which does not have the capacity to create a new TBC (e.g. simple residential system, call in progress, no bearer or connection handover capability) is not listening to bearer request messages and, therefore, cannot receive this message. If the MBC can create a new TBC this FMID check has to be done within one TDMA half frame = 5 ms.

.....

WHILE (FT not ready to transmit "bearer_confirm") DO BEGIN

- a) FT sends WAIT;
- b) If the PT receives WAIT error free:
then the PT responds with WAIT;
else procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 4 below);
- c) If the FT receives WAIT message error free
then continue;
else procedure ends with FT initiating bearer release (bearer setup failed).

END

.....

3 FT sends "bearer_confirm";

- 4 If the PT receives "bearer_confirm" error free:
then continue;
else the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 4).

.....

WHILE (PT not ready to transmit "attributes_request") DO BEGIN

- a) PT sends WAIT;
- b) If the FT receives WAIT error free:
then the FT responds with WAIT;
else procedure ends (bearer setup failed), with the FT initiating a bearer release;
- c) If the PT receives WAIT message error free:
then continue;
else procedure ends (bearer setup failed) with the PT initiating a bearer release.

END

.....

- 5 PT sends "attributes_request";
- 6 FT receives "attributes_request" error free else procedure ends (bearer setup failed) with FT initiating a bearer release;
- 7 FT's TBC asks LLME for an MBC identified by (ARI + PMID + ECN) to be connected. If the FT cannot provide an MBC the procedure ends (bearer setup failed) with FT initiating a bearer release;
- 8 FT's TBC asks MBC for connection with the received logical bearer number (LBN). If the MBC cannot accept a new bearer with this LBN the procedure ends (bearer setup failed) with FT initiating a bearer release.

.....
WHILE (FT not ready to transmit "attributes_confirm") DO BEGIN

- a) FT sends WAIT;
- b) If PT receives WAIT error free:
then the PT responds with WAIT;
else procedure ends (bearer setup failed) with
PT initiating a bearer release;
- c) If FT receives WAIT message error free:
then continue;
else procedure ends with FT initiating bearer release
(bearer setup failed).

END
.....

- 9 FT sends "attributes_confirm";
- 10 If PT receives "attributes_confirm" without error:
then continue;
else the procedure ends (bearer setup failed)
with PT initiating bearer release;
- 11 PT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 5
below);
- 12 If the FT receives "other" with errors or a release:
then the FT initiates bearer release (bearer setup
failed);
else the TBC reports "bearer_established" to the
MBC;
- 13 FT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 5);
- 14 If the PT receives "other" with errors or a
release:
then the PT initiates bearer release (bearer
setup failed);
else the TBC reports "bearer_established" to
the MBC.

NOTE 3: Receiving without error means A-field and X-field CRC hold and message is recognised (message type decoded).

NOTE 4: If WAIT messages were received before, the PT should release the TBC by using a bearer release procedure. Otherwise the TBC shall stop transmissions and the PT should release the TBC.

NOTE 5: "immediately" means, In the TDMA half frame following the transmission of the "attributes_confirm" message (step 11) or of the first "other" message (step 13).

10.5.1.2.2 FT initiated

Predicates:

- a) For setting up the first bearer of a connection: the PT is location registered with the FT and has informed the FT of the RFPI of the RFP that it was locked to;
- b) the PT is scanning all channels of the FT, using the same scanning sequence as the FT or the FT has received a LISTEN-channel list message;
- c) an MBC has been created in the FT's MAC to control a connection. The MBC has knowledge of at least one available channel;
- d) the FT's MBC has created a new TBC in order to set up a new bearer. The MBC has issued PMID, FMID, ECN, the physical channel identification and a new LBN for this connection to the TBC.

Procedure description:

Same as in subclause 10.5.1.2.1 with the following two exceptions:

- change transmission direction of all messages;
- the "bearer_request" message cannot be the BEARER_HANDOVER_REQUEST message as defined in subclause 7.2.5.3. Bearer handover of a duplex bearer is always initiated by the PT.

Procedure:

Same procedure as PT initiated with following changes:

- exchange names PT and FT in procedure steps;
- change PMID in step 2 to FMID;
- step 1 is changed to:

FT transmits one "bearer_request" at the right time on a given available channel (selection defined in 11.4.3) to it's known PT.

10.5.1.3 B-field single bearer setup procedure

The B-field single bearer setup procedure may be initiated from either side, PT or FT.

10.5.1.3.1 PT initiated

During bearer setup the A-field tail messages follow the normal T-MUX rules, except for the first transmission of the PT. The first transmission of the PT is labelled in the header's tail identification and the tail carries either a M_T message indicating that the connection uses B-field setup (subclause 7.2.5.8) or a setup request from the advanced connection control set (subclause 7.2.5.3). In the latter case the FT can choose to use the A-field setup (see subclause 10.5.1.2) or the B-field setup (this procedure).

Predicates: the same as in subclause 10.5.1.2

Procedure description:

This procedure is based on the exchange of:

- a "bearer_request" message from PT to FT; followed by
- a "bearer_confirm" message from FT to PT; followed by
- an "other" message from PT to FT; followed by
- an "other" message from FT to PT.

The "bearer_request" message is:

- the BEARER_REQUEST message of subclause 7.3.3.2 where the second header indicates ACCESS_REQUEST, BEARER_HANDOVER_REQUEST or CONNECTION_HANDOVER_REQUEST.

The "bearer_confirm" message is:

- the BEARER_CONFIRM message of subclause 7.3.3.3.

NOTE 1: All service parameters in the bearer request and the bearer confirm message shall be the same.

The messages are carried in at least the B0 subfield. The bearer request and bearer confirm messages are extended MAC control. Between request and confirm the exchange of some WAIT messages (subclause 7.3.3.4) are allowed in subfield B0. The FMID contained in the WAIT and the "bearer_confirm" messages shall be the same as that in the "bearer_request" message. The "other" message is used to switch the bearer state at the receiving end to Bearer_Established.

Independent of the current encryption mode of the connection (enabled or disabled) bearer setup starts always in "clear" (encryption disabled). Transmissions on the new bearer are switched to the current encryption mode of the connection immediately after the second "other" message was transmitted/received.

Procedure:

- 1 PT transmits one "bearer_request" at the right time on a given available channel (selection defined in subclause 11.4.2) to one of its known RFPs;
- 2 FT receives "bearer_request" error free (see NOTE 3) with correct FMID and creates new TBC else procedure ends bearer setup failed, no TBC = no transmissions);

NOTE 2: It is assumed that an FT which does not have the capacity to create a new TBC (e.g. simple residential system, call in progress, no bearer or connection handover capability) is not listening to bearer request messages and, therefore, cannot receive this message. If the MBC can create a new TBC this FMID check has to be done within one TDMA half frame = 5 ms.

- 3 FT's TBC asks LLME for an MBC identified by (ARI + PMID + ECN) to be connected. If the FT cannot provide an MBC the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 4);
- 4 FT's TBC asks MBC for connection with the received logical bearer number (LBN). If the MBC cannot accept a new bearer with this LBN the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 4).

.....
WHILE (FT not ready to transmit "bearer_confirm") DO BEGIN

- a) FT sends WAIT;
- b) If PT receives WAIT error free:
then PT responds with WAIT;
else procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 5);
- c) If FT receives WAIT message error free:
then continue;
else procedure ends with FT initiating bearer release (bearer setup failed);

END
.....

- 5 FT sends "bearer_confirm";
- 6 If PT receives "bearer_confirm" without error:
then continue;
else the procedure ends (bearer setup failed, see NOTE 5);
- 7 PT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 6);
- 8 If the FT receives "other" with correct A-field and X-field CRCs :
then the TBC reports "bearer_established" to the MBC;
else the FT initiates bearer release (bearer setup failed);

9 FT sends immediately "other" (see NOTE 6);

- 10 If the PT receives "other" with correct A-field and X-field CRCs :
then the TBC reports "bearer_established" to the MBC;
else the PT initiates bearer release (bearer setup failed).

NOTE 3: Except for the reception of the "bearer_request" message the expression "Received error free" means, that the A-field and all B-subfields are received without CRC failure. For the "bearer_request" message, the A-field and the B0-subfield shall be received without CRC error.

NOTE 4: The FT should release the TBC with a bearer release procedure.

NOTE 5: If WAIT messages were received before, the PT should release the TBC by using a bearer release procedure. Otherwise the TBC shall stop transmissions and the PT should release the TBC.

NOTE 6: "Immediately" means, In the TDMA half frame following the transmission of the "bearer_confirm" message (step 7) or of the first "other" message (step 9).

NOTE 7: The relevant MAC messages (bearer request, bearer confirm, WAIT and release) have to be in subfield B0. Nevertheless duplication in other subfields is allowed.

10.5.1.3.2 FT initiated

During bearer setup the A-field tail messages follow the normal T-MUX rules.

Predicates: same as in subclause 10.5.1.2.2

Procedure description:

same as in subclause 10.5.1.3.1 with the following two exceptions:

- change transmission direction of all messages;
- the second header in the BEARER_REQUEST message cannot indicate bearer handover. Bearer handover of a duplex bearer is always initiated by the PT.

Procedure:

Same procedure as PT initiated with following changes:

- exchange names PT and FT;
- change FMID in step 2 to PMID;
- step 1 changes to:
- FT transmits one "bearer_request" at the right time on a given available channel (selection defined in subclause 11.4.3) to its known PT.

10.5.1.4 Double simplex setup procedure

Terminology:

T-side: the side that will be the eventual transmitter of the double simplex bearer.

R-side: the side that will be the eventual receiver of the double simplex bearer.

Predicates:

- a) the connection (or the MBC) already exists, i.e. a double simplex bearer shall only be added to an existing connection. At least one (pilot) duplex bearer shall be controlled by this connection;
- b) the wanted service is known at both endpoints. To provide the wanted service an asymmetric connection is to be used;
- c) the T-side knows the FT's ARI, the PT's PMID, the ECN and the LBN of the wanted bearer. It also knows if the wanted bearer is to be used for a bearer handover or for a connection setup, and whether the connection setup is for handing over a connection.

The procedure has two phases:

- selection of suitable physical channels;
- bearer setup using those channels.

There are two methods of double simplex bearer setup: indirect setup, and direct setup.

The indirect double simplex bearer setup is based on the R-side transmission of a single "dummy" message on that physical channel of the channel pair which lies in the normal R-side transmit half-frame. When received without error, the T-side may proceed with the direct bearer setup procedure starting the double simplex transmissions on the same channel pair in the next TDMA frame.

The "dummy" message is the following message:

- the UNCONFIRMED_DUMMY message defined in subclause 7.2.5.3 (A-field setup) and subclause 7.3.3.8 (B-field setup): Sent by the R-side.

The direct double simplex bearer setup is based on the exchange of the following messages:

- the START channel list message sent by the T-side; together with
- the "bearer_request" messages transmitted by the T-side; followed by
- the "attributes" message transmitted by the T-side; followed by
- the ACTIVE channel list message received by the T-side.

NOTE 1: The "attributes" message occurs only in A-field setup.

NOTE 2: The START channel list message is sent on a already established bearer.

NOTE 3: The ACTIVE channel list message is transmitted on any duplex bearer.

The "bearer_request" message is the following message:

- the UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST message defined either in subclause 7.2.5.3 (A-field setup) or in subclause 7.3.3.2 (B-field setup):

The "attributes" message for A-field setup is:

- the ATTRIB_T message (subclause 7.2.5.2). The Request/Confirm (R/C) bit is set to 0.

Channel selection procedure:

Prior to initiating an Indirect Setup, the R-side shall select a channel using the double simplex channel procedures as described in subclause 11.4. The T-side shall not select the channel.

NOTE 4: Although the R-side only makes a single (backward) transmission, the channel selection must use the double simplex procedure.

The R-side should select other suitable physical channels for setup, and should indicate these to the T-side using indirect setup (the "dummy" message) or GOOD or LISTEN channel list messages.

NOTE 5: These channel list messages may be transmitted on any existing bearer of this connection, and may be M_T messages or extended MAC control.

The T-side always initiates the double simplex transmissions as described in the direct setup procedure. When initiating this procedure, the T-side should give preference to accepting any indirect setup procedures from the R-side.

When selecting channels for the direct procedure (i.e. when not responding to an indirect setup transmission) the T-side should select a channel in the following order of preference:

- a) a channel indicated by a LISTEN message;
- b) any channel that is aligned to a predefined R-side scanning pattern (see subclause 11.8 for RFPs, 11.9 for PPs);
- c) a channel indicated by a GOOD message.

In these cases the T-side channel selection shall use the double simplex channel selection procedures as described in subclause 11.4.

Before selecting a physical channel, the T-side should attempt to receive one (or more) transmission on that channel. If a connectionless or broadcast transmission is received (as indicated by the BA coding (see subclause 7.1.4) the physical channel should not be used.

NOTE 6: Connectionless and broadcast transmissions should be given special treatment, to improve their reliability.

Indirect setup procedure:

The indirect procedure enables the R-side to propose a channel to set up a double simplex bearer. Nevertheless, it is the T-side's responsibility to accept the proposal.

R-side proposal:

The R-side shall initiate the set up by transmitting a "dummy" message in the normal half of the TDMA frame. This transmission shall be aligned to a known T-side scanning pattern (see subclauses 11.8 and 11.9). The R-side shall then attempt to receive a direct double simplex set up on these channels as though a LISTEN message had been sent (i.e. the R-side shall listen to the channel for 4 TDMA frames).

If the "dummy" message is received successfully by the T-side, the T-side should initiate a direct double simplex setup on that channel using the procedure listed below. If the T-side responds to this "dummy" transmission, it shall commence double simplex transmissions in the TDMA frame immediately following the TDMA frame that contained the DUMMY message.

Direct setup procedure:

The T-side shall report a setup attempt on the selected physical channels by issuing a START channel list message. This message shall be transmitted only once for one setup attempt on any bearer of this connection. The START message shall be transmitted on at least one established bearer when responding to a GOOD message (channel selection (c) above; see subclause 10.5.2 for the channel list messages).

NOTE 7: The START message may be duplicated on more than one bearer, provided that all transmissions of the START message occur within a single TDMA frame.

NOTE 8: The START message may be a M_T message or extended MAC control.

At the T-side the MBC creates a TBC and shall start transmissions on both physical channels of the new bearer in the same TDMA frame if the R-side scanning pattern is known (channel selection type (b) above) or if the R-side has a temporary TBC installed (channel selection type (a) above). Otherwise, the TBC shall start transmissions on both physical channels of the new bearer in the TDMA frame following that frame in which the START channel list message was transmitted. Transmissions on a new bearer shall start in "clear" (encryption disabled), and for encrypted connections the transmissions shall be switched to "encrypted" at the third TDMA frame boundary after the transmission of the START message.

NOTE 9: This ensures that the next two TDMA frames, which may contain B-field setup messages, shall always be transmitted in "clear".

For A-field setup:

The first transmissions on both channels may violate the T-MUX rules defined in subclause 6.2.2.1 and at least one channel shall contain the "bearer_request" message in the A-field tail. This message shall be labelled in the A-field header as a M_T message. The next two allowed TDMA frames for M_T tails (T-MUX algorithm) shall also be used for the bearer setup. In the first of these frames the "bearer_request" message shall be repeated on at least one channel, and in the second the "attributes" message shall be transmitted on at least one channel.

NOTE 10: The A-field setup may transmit the "bearer_request" message in one channel, and the "attributes" message in the other channel.

For B-field setup:

The first transmission on each channel shall contain the "bearer_request" message. This message shall be repeated in the following TDMA frame on both physical channels of the new bearer if the R-side scanning is not known and no temporary TBC is present at the R-side, i.e., only for channel selection type (c): response to a GOOD message. The "bearer_request" message shall always be present in the B0 subfield and may be duplicated into other subfields.

NOTE 11: Further transmissions of the "bearer_request" message are allowed, subject to the rules in the following paragraphs.

NOTE 12: The minimum retransmission of the "bearer_request" message defines the earliest point at which "early" data transmission may occur.

In certain cases the double simplex transmissions shall be limited to a maximum period of 2 TDMA frames. This limit shall apply only if the T-side has not received a GOOD, ACTIVE, or a LISTEN message for the selected double simplex channel.

NOTE 13: A suitable GOOD, ACTIVE, or LISTEN message may be received at any time up to the expiry of this transmission limit. In cases a) and c) above, the GOOD or LISTEN message will have been received before the double simplex transmissions start, and no special action is needed.

NOTE 14: In case b), a rapid response is needed from the R-side if a partial setup attempt is received by the R-side. The immediate transmission of a LISTEN message is therefore recommended.

The T-side shall now wait for a confirmation from the R-side of successful double simplex bearer establishment. A confirmation shall be indicated by the reception of an ACTIVE channel list message for this pair of physical channels on any existing bearer of the connection.

NOTE 15: This ACTIVE channel list message may also occur as a reply to a QUERY_N or a QUERY_H channel list message issued by the initiating side.

At the T-side the reception of the ACTIVE channel list message switches the bearer state to Bearer_Established. If this message is not received within T212 frames after the first bearer request message was transmitted or a POOR channel list message is received for this bearer at any time during bearer setup, the bearer setup has failed and the MAC releases the new bearer with the unacknowledged release procedure (subclause 10.7.2.1).

At the R-side of a double simplex bearer a correctly received START channel list message may occur on any established bearer, and shall immediately alter the receiver scanning pattern if this is possible.

When a scanning change is possible, the R-side receiver scanner shall listen on the indicated pair of physical channels during at least four TDMA frames following that frame in which the START message was received. If a LISTEN message has not already been sent as part of the channel selection procedure, the R-side should immediately return a LISTEN message for the indicated channels.

NOTE 16: The LISTEN message may be transmitted in all cases.

If a change to the scanning is not possible, the R-side should respond with a POOR channel list message.

At the R-side, a "bearer_request" message may be received on any physical channel. The physical channel should also be indicated by the receipt of a START message, but the receipt of the START message only essential in certain cases (notably for encrypted connections).

NOTE 17: The first "bearer_request" message may occur before the START message, even for encrypted connections.

For encrypted connections, a successfully established TBC shall only be connected to the MBC if a START message has been received for that bearer. Otherwise the TBC shall be released.

NOTE 18: The START message is essential for encrypted connections to enable the start of encryption.

For connections which are not encrypted, a successfully established TBC shall be connected to the MBC even if the START message is not received.

In both cases, successful establishment of a TBC requires the following setup messages to be received.

For A-field setup:

If a "bearer_request" message is received on at least one channel a TBC shall be created. The TBC shall try to receive the repeated "bearer_request" and the "attributes" messages on both physical channels. If both these messages are received within 3 frames without errors, and at least one message is received without errors on each channel, the TBC should be connected to the MBC and the bearer shall switch it's state to Bearer_Established. Otherwise, the MAC shall release the TBC.

For B-field setup:

If a "bearer_request" message is received on at least one channel a TBC shall be created. The TBC shall try to receive the repeated "bearer_request" message on both physical channels. If this message is received within 2 frames without errors on both physical channels the TBC should be connected to the MBC and the bearer shall switch it's state to Bearer_Established. Otherwise, the MAC shall release the TBC.

As soon as a new double simplex bearer TBC is established, the MBC at the receiving end shall report this event with an ACTIVE channel list message to the T-side. This message shall be transmitted on any established bearer of the connection.

If the R-side detects an unsuccessful setup attempt (i.e. at least one setup message is received for a given bearer, but the full setup criteria as given above have not been achieved), then the R-side should request an immediate halt to the setup attempt by sending a POOR command.

NOTE 19: This action is not essential. The setup attempt should terminate due to lack of a positive message.

I-channel data transmission may start on both physical channels as soon as there is available capacity. For A-field setup this can occur in the first transmission, but for B-field setup at least two setup messages have to be transmitted. Any I-channel data transmitted before the bearer state is "established" (i.e. before receipt of the ACTIVE channel list message) may be lost if the bearer setup fails.

NOTE 20: Data transfer on an unestablished bearer is unreliable. In particular, the I_p error corrected service cannot return acknowledgements until it has been connected to the MBC.

10.5.2 Channel list procedures

10.5.2.1 Scope

Channel list procedures use a set of channel list messages to:

- negotiate pairs of physical channels to be used for new bearers;
- report the status of a pair of physical channels;
- trigger bearer setup procedures.

The channel list messages relate to the base station with the RPN contained in the messages.

10.5.2.2 Description of the channel list messages

Message	Meaning
ACTIVE:	the endpoint that sends this message reports that the indicated pair of physical channels is in use as an established bearer of this connection.
GOOD:	the indicated pair of physical channels is unused at the endpoint that sends this message, and may be used for a new bearer.
POOR:	the endpoint that sends this message tells the recipient that the indicated pair of physical channels cannot be used for a new bearer, e.g. poor quality or already in use with a third party.
F/S_NOT:	the endpoint that sends this message does either not support the indicated frequency or has a "blind slot" at the indicated slot position (see coding in subclause 7.2.5.3.10).
QUERY_N:	the endpoint that sends this message requests some information on the indicated pair of physical channels.
QUERY_H:	the QUERY_H channel list message has exactly the same function as the QUERY_N message. The QUERY_H message however shall only be used to get channel information needed for bearer handover and for connection handover.
LISTEN:	the endpoint that sends this message reports that it's receiver temporarily installs a 'receive only' TBC which will listen to the receive channels of the indicated pair of physical channels for at least the next 4 TDMA frames in order to recognise bearer setup requests.

START: the endpoint that sends this message has selected the indicated pair of physical channels for a new bearer and shall transmit on this bearer in at least the next TDMA frame. If the channel pair is accessible and no TBC is installed at the receiving endpoint of a START message, the receiving side should install a temporary 'receive only' TBC to recognise bearer setup requests.

10.5.2.3 Usage of the channel list messages

Message	Meaning
ACTIVE:	this message shall be used by the receiving side to confirm the establishment of a double simplex bearer, and may be used from either side at any time to report the status of the physical channel pair.
GOOD, POOR, F/S_NOT:	these messages may be used at any time from either side to report the status of the physical channel pair.
QUERY_N:	this message may be used at any time from either side.
QUERY_H:	this message is allowed only during a handover operation (bearer or connection).
LISTEN:	this message may be used at any time.

NOTE 1: Subclauses 10.2.4.3.1 to 10.2.4.3.3 describe which endpoint is allowed to initiate bearer setup. Therefore, a LISTEN message transmitted in the wrong direction is meaningless.

START: this message is used to announce double simplex bearer setup attempts (handover or initial setup) on the indicated channel pair and to trigger encryption on those bearers. For one setup attempt the START channel list message shall be sent on one or more bearers within one TDMA frame. The START channel list message is sent by the PT when the bearer belongs to an asymmetric uplink connection, and by the FT when the connection is asymmetric downlink.

The START message may also be used to announce duplex bearer setup attempts on frequencies other than the scanned frequencies (refer to subclauses 11.8 and 11.9). When used, the message is sent on one or more bearers within one single TDMA frame. FTs may use this mechanism only when the connection is asymmetric downlink, and PTs when the connection is symmetric or asymmetric uplink.

Except for the START message, all channel list messages may be retransmitted. When not explicitly prohibited, the channel list messages can be sent on any bearer of the connection, even during bearer setup (if the capacity is available).

NOTE 2: There is no guarantee the receiving endpoint will decode the channel list messages during bearer setup. It is recommended to transmit important messages which may influence setup procedures (i.e. LISTEN, START, and ACTIVE) only on established bearers.

The following channel list messages should produce a response from the receiving entity:

- QUERY_N or QUERY_H messages:
 - * Message responses: GOOD, POOR, ACTIVE, LISTEN or F/S_NOT.
- START message for double simplex bearer:
 - * Message response: ACTIVE or POOR.

10.6 C/O bearer handover

10.6.1 General

The MAC layer provides PTs and FTs with several mechanisms to control the quality of transmissions and receptions. Bearer handover may be initiated either by using this quality information or by receiving a bearer handover request message from the far end (see subclauses 7.2.5.5 and 7.3.5). For duplex bearers the PT only can initiate a bearer handover, and for double simplex bearers the transmitting side only can initiate a bearer handover. The existing bearer can be maintained until the new bearer has been established. During bearer handover the two bearers can operate in parallel.

NOTE 1: Bearer handover requires that an MBC for the connection exists on both sides, PT and FT, and that the new selected RFP at the fixed side belongs to the same cluster.

PTs should use bearer handover to attempt to connect to the best RFP of the cluster in which the connection is established. This may be the same RFP as the existing bearer, or may be a new RFP.

DECT equipments may have several indicators to monitor reception quality:

- the A-field CRC;
- the X-field CRC;
- the CRCs of the B-subfields in protected mode (E-type or U-type for IP);
- X-field to Z-field comparison (for Z-field refer to ETS 300 175-2 [2]);
- link identity information;
- synchronisation pulse;
- clock jitter;
- signal strength;
- . . .

To control the quality of transmissions the MAC layer uses the reports from the far end, coded in two bits:

- the (Q1,Q2) bits or the (BCK,Q2) bits or the (BCK,ACK) bits (see subclauses 7.1.1 and 7.3.5.4).

There are no specified rules for the PT which define when a bearer handover attempt has to be made. For system reasons the maximum rate at which bearer handovers can be performed is limited by a simple timer. Bearer handover should not be attempted within T202 seconds of the last successful handover of that logical bearer.

NOTE 2: This should not be confused with multiple attempts at handover, but following one successful handover, a new handover cannot be attempted immediately.

Different handover procedures exist for duplex and double simplex bearers.

10.6.2 Duplex bearer handover procedure

The setup of a new bearer for duplex bearer handover is always initiated by the PT. The MBC of the PT shall have knowledge of at least one available channel and shall know the address (FMID) of the wanted FT. The MBC creates a TBC and issues called address (PMID/FMID) and the physical channel description to the new TBC. The MBC indicates to the TBC that the wanted bearer is used for a bearer handover and which bearer setup procedure shall be used. In addition, for advanced connections the MBC issues the

new TBC with the ECN and the LBN, which is also assigned to the TBC of the bearer which has to be handed over.

The TBC tries to set up a new bearer using one of the single bearer setup procedures described in subclause 10.5.1:

- the basic bearer setup procedure for all basic connections;
- the A-field single bearer setup procedure or the B-field single bearer setup procedure for advanced connections.

At the end of all these procedures the TBC reports either "bearer_established" or "bearer_setup_failed" to the MBC.

NOTE 1: At the called side these messages only occur if a bearer setup attempt was detected (TBC created).

If the bearer setup failed the MBC can reattempt a bearer handover with the same procedure, subject to using a new available channel each time (see subclause 11.4) and/or accessing a new RFP. Within any time window of T202 seconds at most N201 bearer setup attempts shall occur for a bearer handover of one particular bearer.

An MBC assumes that a bearer setup was successful when the TBC reported "bearer_established". Immediately after this TBC report the MAC switches the new bearer to the same E/U multiplex as used by the old bearer. For U-type databursts all following transmissions shall contain valid I-channel data.

NOTE 2: In advanced connections the "new" and the "old" bearers have the same LBN number.

NOTE 3: In basic connections, two bearers shall only occur during bearer handover. There is no LBN, i.e. the "new" and the "old" bearer are the only bearers of the connection.

For a limited time the MBC may maintain both TBCs, controlling the new and the old bearer. The MBC in the FT decides when and which one of the two TBCs is released with a bearer release procedure. The FT shall invoke this bearer release procedure within a time interval of T203 after the new bearer was established (TBC reported "bearer_established").

NOTE 4: During the time where the new and the old bearer are maintained, both bearers together form one logical bearer (see subclause 5.5.2).

For the limited time where both bearers are established:

Except for I_N_minimum_delay services all I-channel data transmitted in one TDMA half frame is the same for both bearers (see data flow control, subclause 8.4).

For I_N_minimum_delay services I-channel data transmitted in one TDMA frame may be different for both bearers (see subclause 8.4).

10.6.3 Double simplex bearer handover

The receiving endpoint of a specific double simplex bearer may request a bearer handover. The request may be transmitted on any bearer in reverse direction. The request message is defined as a M_T message in subclause 7.2.5.5 and as an extended MAC control message in subclause 7.3.5.

By receiving a bearer handover request the transmitting side of a double simplex bearer may either initialise a bearer handover, reject the handover request with a BEARER_HANDOVER_REJECT message (see subclauses 7.2.5.5 and 7.3.5) or not react upon this request message.

Initialisation of a bearer handover starts with the negotiation of a new pair of physical channels. This is done using the channel list procedures. The new bearer is set up with the double simplex setup procedure (subclause 10.5.1.4), except that the UNCONFIRMED_HANDOVER message is used in place of the

UNCONFIRMED_ACCESS_REQUEST message. The same logical bearer number LBN is assigned to the new double simplex bearer as for the old bearer.

As soon as possible all I-channel information carried on this logical bearer is duplicated on both double simplex bearers.

NOTE 1: This occurs no later than when the bearer is established, i.e. when the receiving end reports the acceptance of the new bearer with an ACTIVE message (see channel list procedure).

The initiating side shall reattempt to setup a new double simplex bearer at most N201 times within T202 seconds.

NOTE 2: The relevant reattempts are those where the initiating side actually starts transmissions on a new bearer.

The new bearer setup is successful when the initiating side receives a confirmation, i.e. an ACTIVE message (subclauses 7.2.5.3.10 and 7.3.3.7) for this bearer. As soon as this message is received the initiating side proceeds with a bearer release of the old double simplex bearer with the unacknowledged release procedure (see subclause 10.7.2.1).

10.7 C/O bearer release

10.7.1 General

Bearer release describes the release of a TBC which controlled a duplex or a double simplex bearer.

A bearer release may be caused by several events:

- a) the MBC on either side initiates a bearer release;
- b) a bearer in setup phase cannot be connected to an MBC. Here the LLME initiates a bearer release (see single bearer setup procedures);
- c) a TBC received faulty MAC messages during setup (see setup procedures);
- d) the TBC releases the bearer due to a timeout. See handshaking requirement, subclause 11.5;
- e) the TBC receives a release message error free.

NOTE 1: Event b) should not occur for double simplex bearers. Here the channels have to be negotiated before transmissions on a double simplex bearer start.

A bearer release is initiated when on either side one of the events a) .. d) occurs. The FP shall only release a bearer if it has previously received a MAC control message referencing that bearer with correct FMID and PMID. Two bearer release procedures exist:

- the unacknowledged bearer release procedure; and
- the acknowledged bearer release procedure.

The unacknowledged bearer release procedure is always applied for a release of a duplex bearer, and for a double simplex bearer only if the MBC on the transmitting side decides to release the bearer. During this procedure MAC RELEASE messages are transmitted and afterwards the TBC stops transmitting. As a consequence, one of the events d) or e) will occur at the far end.

NOTE 2: If event d) is recognised at the far end a second bearer release procedure is initiated.

The acknowledged bearer release procedure is applied when the receiving end of a double simplex bearer decides to release this bearer (events a), c) and d)). The release is negotiated on a duplex bearer.

NOTE 3: A connection release may interrupt this procedure.

10.7.2 Bearer release procedure description

10.7.2.1 Unacknowledged release procedure

The unacknowledged release procedure shall be applied to release duplex bearers, and double simplex bearers only by the transmitting side (exception for double simplex bearer, see subclause 10.7.2.3).

The unacknowledged release procedure uses the RELEASE message. This message allows the reason for a bearer release to be reported.

All sets of MAC connection control messages contain a RELEASE message. The unacknowledged bearer release procedure shall use the RELEASE message of that message set which was used to setup the bearer. If this message is transmitted in the B-field, the message may be duplicated into all subfields.

The RELEASE message appears twice without any warning, replacing the normal transmission. The message is sent two times in successive frames on that bearer which has to be released, and the transmitting end releases the radio channel immediately afterwards. If the TBC is connected to an MBC and it was not the MBC's decision to release the bearer, the TBC reports this event to the MBC and indicates the reason. Finally the MAC releases the TBC.

The receiving end shall release the channel immediately after successful receipt of any RELEASE message. If the TBC is connected to an MBC the TBC shall report this event to the MBC and indicate the reason. The MAC shall release the TBC afterwards.

10.7.2.2 Acknowledged release procedure

The acknowledged release procedure is only used to release double simplex bearers when initiated by the receiving end.

NOTE 1: The receiving end of double simplex bearers may only initiate an acknowledged release of any of these bearers when at least one established duplex bearer exists. Otherwise the TBC is released without any negotiation.

The receiving end of a double simplex bearer may request a release of this bearer by sending a RELEASE message on any bearer in reverse direction. Within this message the setting of the LBN shall identify the double simplex bearer, and whenever necessary the reason shall be set.

NOTE 2: During bearer handover it is possible that the receiving end initiates an acknowledged bearer release either for the "new" bearer or for the "old" bearer due to a timeout. To avoid ambiguity the reason shall be set to "bearer handover successfully completed" or to "bearer handover failed". While the first command means to release the "old" bearer the latter command indicates to release the "new" bearer.

If the transmitting end of an established double simplex bearer receives a RELEASE message for this bearer, it shall proceed with an unacknowledged bearer release.

The receiving end of a double simplex bearer may correctly receive a RELEASE command issued during the unacknowledged release procedure. In this case the bearer release is confirmed, the MAC releases the TBC and the procedure stops. If no release command is received within T213 frames after initiating the procedure the receiving end of the double simplex bearer shall use the channel list procedure to verify the channel status. The transmitting end may reply with an GOOD or a POOR message. These two messages indicate that the bearer is released. The MAC releases the TBC and the procedure stops. If the reply is the ACTIVE message the release procedure shall be repeated.

10.7.2.3 Fast release procedure

The fast release procedure allows to switch the transmission direction of double simplex bearers very quickly.

The fast release procedure shall only be used during connection modification (see subclause 10.3) to release double simplex bearers. The procedure is always initiated by the MBC of the transmitting side and uses the RELEASE message with the reason set to "reverse".

Both sets of advanced MAC connection control messages, A-field and B-field, contain this RELEASE message. The fast release procedure shall use the RELEASE message of that message set which was used to setup the bearer. If this message is transmitted in the B-field, the message may be duplicated into all subfields.

The RELEASE message appears in one TDMA frame on both physical channels of the double simplex bearer. The transmitting end releases the radio channel immediately afterwards and starts to scan on both radio channels for at least 4 TDMA frames. Within this 4 frames the "old" receiving side is now allowed to setup directly a double simplex bearer in the reverse direction.

The receiving TBC of a RELEASE message with the reason set to "reverse" shall report this event to the MBC. The MBC shall decide either to release the TBC or to setup a new double simplex bearer in reverse direction. Receiving a RELEASE message with reason set to "reverse" has the same effect as a normal release and a received LISTEN channel list message for this physical channel pair. To setup a new double simplex bearer the MBC proceeds with the double simplex setup procedure and takes into account that a equivalent to the LISTEN channel list message was already received.

NOTE: The "old" transmitting side of a double simplex bearer stops transmissions after sending the RELEASE message. If the RELEASE message is not received correctly a timeout shall cause a release on the "old" receiving side (see subclause 11.5).

10.8 C/O data transfer

10.8.1 Higher layer associated signalling (C)

All higher layer control (C_S and C_F -channel data) is protected by a MAC layer ARQ procedure. This procedure is based on the principle that a data transmitter shall retransmit C_S and C_F segments when no acknowledgments for these segments have been received.

For the transmission of C-channel data time windows called ARQ windows are defined. These ARQ windows start with the normal TDMA half frame for transmissions. Therefore, the windows are different for FT and PT:

- ARQ windows for FT start with slot 0;
- ARQ windows for PT start with slot 12.

10.8.1.1 C_S -channel data

The C_S data service is a low rate service with a variable throughput of maximum 2 kbps. Independent of the number of bearers controlled by an MBC a maximum of one C_S segment may be transmitted in a given direction in an ARQ window of 10 ms. The same segment may, however, be duplicated over several bearers.

10.8.1.1.1 Transmission principle

- a) Those TDMA frames where the T-MUX algorithm does not allow C_T messages (see subclause 6.2.2.1) shall not be used for transmissions of C_S segments;
- b) C_S data shall be sent only on duplex bearers. The same C_S segment may be sent on several duplex bearers during one frame. Only one C_S segment shall be transmitted within one ARQ window;
- c) if a C_S segment is sent in one particular ARQ window the successful transmission of this segment is confirmed when an acknowledgement is received in the second half of the same ARQ window on

any of those duplex bearers which carried the C_S segment. Successful acknowledgment is achieved when the A-field of at least one of these bearers was received by the sending side of the C_S segment without CRC failure and with the Q2 bit in the header set to 1. In the direction FT to PT an acknowledgment is also given when Q2 equals 0 and Q1 is set to 1 (Q1 and Q2 bit setting, see subclause 10.8.1.3);

- d) a C_S segment shall be retransmitted until the successful transmission of this segment is confirmed. Retransmission shall be done before another C_S segment is transmitted in the same data direction.

10.8.1.1.2 Numbering principle

- a) A one bit packet number is assigned to each C_S segment. The number shall alter for successive C_S segments. In databursts containing C_S segments this packet number is transmitted in the tail identification field of the A-field header (see subclause 7.1.2);
- b) packet number "1" shall be assigned to the first C_S segment transmitted by an MBC.

10.8.1.2 C_F -channel data

A MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive carrying C_F -channel data delivers a set of C_F segments to the MBC. The number of C_F segments building this set may be equal to or less than the maximum number of acceptable segments indicated by the MBC with the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive (see subclause 8.4). The maximum number shall always be chosen such that all C_F segments can be transmitted in the B-field of one databurst.

C_F -channel data is transmitted as sets of C_F segments, a set of 1 segment for half slot, up to 4 segments for full slot, and up to 10 segments for double slot. Thus either all the C_F segments of one single MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive are contained in the B-field of an E-type databurst or no C_F data at all is in the B-field. The mapping of the C_F segments onto the B-field is described in subclause 6.2.2.3.

10.8.1.2.1 Transmission principle

- a) C_F data shall be sent only on duplex bearers. The same set of C_F segments may be sent on several duplex bearers during one ARQ window. Only one set of C_F segments shall be transmitted within one ARQ window;
- b) if a set of C_F segments is sent in one particular ARQ window the successful transmission of this set is confirmed when an acknowledgement is received in the second half of the same ARQ window on any of those bearers which carried the C_F data. Successful acknowledgment is achieved when the A-field of at least one of these bearers was received without CRC failure and with the Q2 bit in the header set to 1. (Q2 bit setting, see subclause 10.8.1.3);
- c) a set of C_F segments shall be retransmitted until the successful transmission of this set is confirmed. Retransmission shall be done before another set of C_F segments is transmitted in the same data direction.

NOTE 1: Retransmissions of an already acknowledged set of C_F segments is allowed as long as no new set of C_F segments is transmitted.

NOTE 2: Step c) implies that retransmissions may occur on another bearer and/or with interruptions. As a consequence the receiver should not accept any C_F data when the A-field CRC failed.

NOTE 3: E-type databursts containing MAC control only (e.g. release) may follow C_F transmissions on a bearer even when the C_F data are not yet acknowledged.

10.8.1.2.2 Numbering principle

- a) A one bit packet number is assigned to each set of C_F segments. The number shall alter for successive sets. In databursts containing a set of C_F segments this packet number is transmitted in the BA identification of the A-field header (see subclause 7.1.4);
- b) packet number "1" shall be assigned to the first set of C_F segments transmitted by an MBC.

10.8.1.3 Q1 and Q2 bit settings for I_N and I_P_error detection services

The Q1 and Q2 bits are used for C-channel flow control and for quality control. The setting of the Q2 bit fulfils all necessary requirements to guarantee a reliable C-channel data service.

The setting of the Q1 bits may report some further quality details which can improve the functionality. Nevertheless, the setting of Q1 is optional and the meaning depends on the transmission direction.

The following two tables give an overview of the Q1 and Q2 bit setting for both directions:

Q1 and Q2 sent from PT to FT:

Table 66

Q1 bit setting		Q2 bit setting	
antenna switch request	1	1	(A-field CRC passed) AND (all CF accepted when CF segments were received)
no special action from FT requested	0	0	(A-field CRC failed) OR (one or more CF segments not accepted)

Q1 and Q2 sent from FT to PT:Table 67

Q1 setting for given Q2		Q2 bit setting	
sliding collision	1	1	A-field CRC passed (AND B-field data accepted)*
no sliding collision	0	1	
A-field CRC passed	1	0	A-field CRC failed (OR B-field data rejected)*
A-field CRC failed	0	0	
* The indication whether or not B-field data have been accepted/rejected is only mandatory when a set of CF segments was received (refer to subclause 10.8.1.3.1)			

The two following subclauses describe the setting of Q1 and Q2 in more detail.

10.8.1.3.1 Q2 bit settings

For duplex bearers the Q2 bit is the bit a7 of the A-field header. This bit is used for C_S and C_F-channel flow control and may also be used to report bearer quality. The Q2 bit shall be set in response to the last received databurst on this bearer.

The quality of double simplex bearer shall be reported with the bearer quality control message defined in subclause 7.3.5.4. This message provides a Q2 bit for each simplex bearer. The location of the Q2 bits depends on the logical bearer number (LBN). The Q2 bits reserved for established double simplex bearers

shall be set according to the last known quality results. The Q2 bits reserved for non-existing double simplex bearers shall be set to "0".

NOTE 1: No C-channel data is transmitted on double simplex bearers.

NOTE 2: For double simplex bearers the bit a_7 of the A-field header is always set to 0.

NOTE 3: During bearer handover of a double simplex bearer the values of the Q2 bits for this logical bearer should be ignored.

Rules for Q2 bit setting:

- a) the Q2 bit is set to "0" whenever the A-field CRC failed. If the A-field CRC passes the Q2 bit setting is determined by the rules b) or c);
- b) when a set of C_F segments was received (correct A-field and BA bits indicate E-type with C_F) the Q2 bit setting depends on the C_F data only. Setting the bit to "1" indicates an acknowledgment for this set of C_F data (duplex bearer only);
- c) if the B-field contains an I_P segment, an I_N segment or only MAC control (see BA bit setting in the A-field header) the Q2 bit setting depends on the transmission direction.
 - c1) **Data from FT to PT, Q2 from PT to FT:** The Q2 bit shall be set to "1";
 - c2) **Data from PT to FT, Q2 from FT to PT:** The Q2 bit may either be set to "1" or report if the B-field data were accepted. In the latter case the Q2 bit shall be set to "1" for accepted B-field data and to "0" for rejected B-field data. It is the manufacturer's freedom to define the rules for accepting B-field data.

Notes to rule c2):

NOTE 4: Manufacturers should set the Q2 bit according to B-field data acceptance. This option enables PTs to initiate a bearer handover whenever the bearer quality is bad. Tests may be based e.g. on the X-field CRC result or on R_B CRC results of B-subfields if MAC control or an I_P segment was received.

NOTE 5: Q2 set to "1" is also an acknowledgment for received C_S data (duplex bearers only). If the setting of the Q2 bit depends on the acceptance of B-field data the Q1 bit setting option to report the A-field CRC result should also be applied. Otherwise the C_S data throughput may suffer.

10.8.1.3.2 Q1 bit settings

For duplex bearers the Q1 bit is the bit a_3 of the A-field header.

The Q1 bit for double simplex bearers in reverse direction is located in the bearer quality control message defined in subclause 7.3.5.4. This message provides a Q1 bit for each simplex bearer. The location of the Q1 bits depends on the Logical Bearer Number (LBN) of the related double simplex bearer. All Q1 bits reserved for non-existing double simplex bearers shall be set to "0".

NOTE 1: For double simplex bearers the bit a_3 of the A-field header are always set to 0.

NOTE 2: During bearer handover of a double simplex bearer the values of the Q1 bits for this logical bearer should be ignored.

The setting of the Q1 bit has different optional rules for both directions.

Q1 transmitted in direction PT to FT: An RFP may be provided with antenna diversity. The PT may request the FT to switch the antenna by setting the Q1 bit to "1". Otherwise the Q1 bit is set to "0".

NOTE 3: Requesting to switch the antenna is optional. It is allowed to set Q1 always to "0".

Q1 transmitted in direction FT to PT: The rule to set the Q1 bit depends on the Q2 setting:

a) **Q2 set to 1:** Q1 set to "1" indicates a detected sliding collision with another radio signal. Otherwise Q1 is set to "0";

NOTE 4: The indication of sliding collision is optional. It is allowed to set Q1 always to "0".

NOTE 5: If the option of reporting sliding collisions is applied the setting of the Q1 bit shall report a collision on one single received databurst on this bearer (i.e. no statistical averaging shall be applied).

b) **Q2 set to 0:** Q1 may be set according to the A-field CRC result: Q1 = "1" reports CRC passed and Q1 = "0" reports CRC failed. Otherwise Q1 is set to "0".

NOTE 6: Q1 setting according to the A-field CRC is optional. It is allowed to set Q1 always to "0".

NOTE 7: If the option to report A-field CRC is applied the Q1 bit shall be set:

- * in response to the last received databurst on this bearer for a duplex bearer;
- * in response of the last known CRC result of this bearer for a double simplex bearer.

10.8.2 MOD-2 protected I-channel operation (Ip)

10.8.2.1 General

The modulo-2 procedure uses a 2-state packet number in the A-field header. This packet number applies to the complete B-field of Ip data. The first Ip packet sent on a new logical bearer is labelled with packet number "1".

Successful reception of the data is acknowledged independently for each logical bearer. For duplex bearers the acknowledgement mechanism uses the Q2 and the BCK bits in the return A-field header. For double simplex bearers, two equivalent bits, the ACK and BCK bits, for each logical simplex bearer are multiplexed into a "MAC-MOD2-ACKS" message, and this message is sent in at least one B-subfield on at least one reverse bearer.

Following successful acknowledgement, the transmitter may advance to the next packet, toggling the packet number. (If the transmitter has no new packet to send, it may repeat the old data, or send E-mode filling data.)

NOTE 1: MOD-2 operation in the asymmetric case shall use the E32-mux or the E80-mux in the reverse direction.

NOTE 2: The MOD-2 receiver may use selective reception, or even majority voting to achieve CRC success.

10.8.2.2 Limiting the lifetime of packets

The originating entity (the sender of packets) is required to limit the lifetime of every data packet to an integral number of TDMA frames, according to the service demanded by the DLC layer in the MAC-CON.Req primitive.

This requirement shall be met by stopping the MOD-2 retransmission of any packet that exceeds this time limit, irrespective of whether an acknowledgement has been received from the peer TBC. This process is called a "Data Jump", and several alternative procedures are described in subclause 10.8.2.5.

NOTE: A data jump can be combined with "bearer replacement".

10.8.2.3 A-field shall always be correct

The receive procedure is required to always receive the A-field successfully before accepting any of the B-field during MOD-2 operation.

NOTE: This requirement means that E-mode interruptions are allowed at any time. For example a B-field MAC message ("bearer release") can be sent on the old bearer during bearer handover, without causing an exception condition and risking data errors.

10.8.2.4 Use of the acknowledge bits

During MOD-2 operation two bits are used for Ip-channel flow control. These bits are located in different positions for duplex and double simplex bearers. The two bits are:

- the Q2 bit and the BCK bit in the A-field header at positions a₃ and a₇ as described in subclause 7.1 for a duplex bearer;
- two pairs of an ACK and a BCK bit in the quality control message described in subclause 7.3.5.4 for a double simplex bearer.

The settings of the Q2 bit for duplex bearers and the ACK bit for double simplex bearers are different and described in subclause 10.8.2.4.1.

The setting of the BCK bit is the same for duplex and double simplex bearers and described in subclause 10.8.2.4.2.

The two control bits Q2 and BCK shall be set individually for each duplex bearer of a symmetric or an asymmetric connection.

The two control bits ACK and BCK in the quality control message shall be set individually for each logical half of a double simplex bearer in asymmetric connections. The ACK bits for non-existing logical double simplex bearers shall be set to "0" and the BCK bits to "1".

During bearer handover of a double simplex bearer, the acknowledge results for the old and the new bearer (bearers with the same LBN) should be combined to produce a single set of results.

NOTE: It is not allowed to transmit two different Ip segments in the same TDMA half frame on the "new" and the "old" double simplex bearer during bearer handover (see subclause 10.6.3).

10.8.2.4.1 Q2 and ACK bit setting for Ip_error_correction services

Q2 bit setting for duplex bearer

The Q2 bit setting influences the retransmission mechanism from C_S, C_F and I_P data. The setting of the Q2 bit is exactly the same as in I_N and I_{P_error_detection} services when transmitted in PT to FT direction (refer to subclause 10.8.1.3.1).

NOTE 1: When an Ip segment was received (A-field CRC correct and the BA bits set to I_P segment with number 0 or 1) the Q2 bit is set to "1", regardless of the results of the B-field CRCs. The MOD-2 retransmission scheme assumes for proper operation, that the packet number of the I_P segment is then known to the I_P data receiver.

ACK bit setting for double simplex bearer:

Data received on a double simplex bearer is acknowledged on another bearer in reverse direction. The reverse bearer provides an ACK bit for each simplex bearer in forward direction.

NOTE 2: One of the two simplex bearers used for I_P data transfer and the reverse bearer for acknowledgments may be in adjacent slots. Therefore it is probably not possible for the data receiver to always set the ACK bit in response to the last received databurst.

The ACK bit on the reverse bearer does not influence the C_S and the C_F retransmission scheme and is set as follows:

- for services using MOD-2 MAC retransmission the ACK bit reports the last correctly received I_P packet number, i.e. the packet number indicated in the last received A-field with correct CRC and the BA bits indicating I_P data.

Exception: When receiving a RESET message (during a I_P bearer reset procedure, see subclause 10.8.2.5.3) the ACK bit shall be reset to "0".

10.8.2.4.2 BCK bit setting

In MOD-2 mode the second control bit, BCK, is used to report the I_P packet number of the next expected I_P segment.

NOTE: A unilateral jump procedure (see subclause 10.8.2.5.2) may toggle the BCK bit.

10.8.2.5 Data jump procedures

"Data jump" is defined as the name for any procedure that is used to unstick a bearer that is failing to transmit its I_P data successfully. This is required to stop a retransmission when the packet lifetime has expired, or to stop a transmission if the packet has been rescheduled (via another bearer). There are three data jump procedures:

- bearer replacement (incl bearer release);
- unilateral (unacknowledged) jump;
- I_P bearer reset.

NOTE 1: In the preferred implementation the MBC functional block contains the data jump control.

NOTE 2: Data jump procedures may cause a loss and/or a duplication of data.

10.8.2.5.1 Bearer replacement

In the event of repeated data errors, bearer handover is the expected MAC response. Bearer handover is attempted, and bearer release may occur if the handover is unsupported or unsuccessful. If a (non-seamless) handover is done - here defined as "bearer replacement", then it can provide a data jump.

During normal bearer handover a new bearer with the same LBN is created. The packet numbering of both bearers is the same, and I_P data is duplicated on both bearers.

"Bearer replacement" is defined to be the case where an old bearer is replaced with a new bearer that has a different LBN. For bearer replacement the new bearer contains independent packet numbering for I_P MOD-2 protected data. Now the data on a new bearer may be different data or may (still) be a duplicate of the data on the old bearer.

10.8.2.5.2 Unilateral jump

The unilateral jump process is described with two state tables, one for the transmitter, and one for the receiver.

Receiver:

The three state variables at the receiver are:

- LAST-BCK meaning "what packet number was transmitted in the last BCK bit to indicate the number of the next expected Ip segment";
- LAST-PKT meaning "what Ip packet number appeared in the last databurst with correct received A-field and containing Ip data";
- THIS-PKT-NO meaning "what IP packet number appears in the next databurst with correct received A-field and containing Ip data".

Table 68

	THIS-PKT=LAST-PKT	THIS-PKT=LAST-BCK	RESULT
(a)	yes	yes	retransmit
(b)	no	yes	normal advance
(c)	yes	no	unnecessary retransmit
(d)	no	no	jump

Transmitter:

Define: **LTI_P** = packet number of the last transmitted Ip segment.

The two state variables at the transmitter are:

δACKN meaning "has the receiver acknowledged the LTI_P at least once?";

- for duplex bearer the LTI_P is acknowledged by receiving an A-field correct and with the Q2 bit set to 1 (see subclause 10.8.2.4.1);
- for double simplex bearer the LTI_P is acknowledged by receiving an A-field correct and with ACK set to LTI_P (see subclause 10.8.2.4.1).

NOTE 1: For double simplex bearer this process is independent for both simplex bearers.

NOTE 2: δACKN is reset to "no" if the transmission of a new Ip packet starts.

LAST-BCK meaning "what was the setting of the last correct received BCK bit (with the BCK bit the receiver reports the next expected Ip packet)?".

NOTE 3: If δACKN switches to "yes" also a new BCK is received.

Table 69

	Σ ACKN	$LTIP = \text{LAST-BCK}$	RESULT
(a)	Yes	no	normal advance (or retransmit)
(b)	Yes	yes	retransmit or jump
(c)	No	no	retransmit (undersexed jump)
(d)	No	yes	retransmit

In state (b) the transmitter can choose between retransmission and jump. Its choice is reflected in the pkt number chosen. If jump the pkt number toggles if retransmit the pkt number is unchanged.

NOTE 4: The unilateral data jump procedure cannot be the only available procedure, because it can only be used if at least the A-field (containing the packet number) has succeeded.

10.8.2.5.3 MAC I_P bearer reset

Any Control using an E-Type multiplex interrupts I_P data flow on a physical channel of a logical bearer without warning. A MAC I_P bearer reset on that half of the logical bearer which uses a particular physical channel is accomplished by the transmission of a RESET_REQUEST message on that physical channel.

NOTE: During bearer handover one half of a logical bearer may consist of two physical channels, one physical channel belonging to the 'old' bearer and one belonging to the 'new' bearer. The reception of a RESET_REQUEST message on either of these physical channels indicates an I_P bearer reset. No U-type multiplex, i.e. I_P -channel data, would be sent on either of these physical channels until the MAC I_P bearer reset is completed.

The transmitter (T-side) repeats the RESET_REQUEST message on the same logical half bearer until a RESET_CONFIRM message is received in reply or the bearer is released. No further I_P data shall be sent on this bearer, until the reply is received.

The receiving end (R-side) of a RESET_REQUEST message shall reset the packet number sequence variable and the receive buffers of that logical half bearer on which the message was received. The R-side shall reply with a RESET_CONFIRM message. The RESET_CONFIRM message may be transmitted on any bearer with capacity in direction to the T-side, and may be duplicated onto more than one bearer.

If possible the RESET_REQUEST and RESET_CONFIRM messages should be duplicated onto more than one B-subfield of a bearer. The RESET messages are defined in subclause 7.3.5.3.

Upon receipt of RESET_CONFIRM the T-side may resume transmission of I_P data on the logical half bearer, starting with packet 1.

10.8.3 Higher layer unprotected information (I_N) and MAC error detection services (I_P)

10.8.3.1 I_N minimum_delay service

Each U-type databurst carries one I_N data segment. The MBC asks for each I_N data segment with a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive and receives one I_N segment from the DLC in a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive (see subclause 8.4).

NOTE: During bearer handover two established bearers may be assigned to one logical bearer. The I_N data segments transmitted in one TDMA frame on these two bearers need not be the same.

10.8.3.2 I_N_normal_delay and I_P_error_detection services

At the beginning of each TDMA half frame the MBC shall dispose of all I-channel (I_N or I_P-channel) segments which are transmitted in this TDMA half frame (see subclause 8.4). The number of segments equals the number of logical simplex bearers which are allocated for I-channel data transmissions in this TDMA half frame. The segments shall be assigned to the allocated logical simplex bearers in ascending order: the first segment to the logical simplex bearer with the smallest LBN number, the last segment to that bearer with the highest LBN number.

NOTE 1: There might exist additional logical simplex bearers which are reserved for transmissions of extended control.

NOTE 2: The list of available LBN numbers may be not continuous: In one TDMA half frame there might be 4 logical simplex bearers with e.g. LBNs 1,2,4 and 7 to transmit I-channel data, one simplex bearer with LBN 6 which is used to transmit extended control and two logical simplex bearers with the LBN numbers 3 and 5 for receiving data. Bearers with successive LBNs might not be in consecutive slot order.

11 Medium access layer management procedures

11.1 Broadcasting

11.1.1 RFP transmission

The DECT fixed part's management entity makes all the N and Q-channel information available to the BMC by means of a MAC-ME-RFP_PRELOAD.Reg primitive. The LLME may update this information at any time. This primitive is used to give the MAC layer the SARI messages (subclause 7.2.3.6).

11.1.2 PP reception

The MAC layer of the PP passes Q and N logical channel information to the LLME by means of a MAC-ME-INFO.Ind primitive. If necessary, the LLME responds with a MAC-ME-INFO.Res primitive.

The PP shall understand and comply with all Q-channel information that is needed for the service that the PP requires. For example, a PP that requires an RFP to supply it with frequency control information, shall check that the RFP provides this capability before attempting to establish a connection with it.

11.2 Extended system information

11.2.1 PP requests

The PP may use this facility to submit its ARI(s) for checking by the RFP in its TARI list. The procedure is invoked by the LLME passing a MAC-ME_EXT.Reg primitive to the MAC layer. When the MAC layer has received a reply from the RFP, it issues a MAC-ME_EXT.Cfm primitive containing the SDU.

11.2.2 RFP response

An RFP of an FP that provides the extended system information service shall issue a MAC-ME_EXT.Ind primitive to the LLME after receiving an extended system information request. The LLME may return a reply with a MAC-ME_EXT.Res primitive. Data delivered within this primitive shall be transmitted within T206 frames after receiving the extended system information request.

11.3 PP states and state transitions

Refer to figure 6 for PP states and transitions.

11.3.1 Actions in Idle_Unlocked and Active_Unlocked states

In the Idle_Unlocked state, a PP need not do anything.

In the Active_Unlocked state, PPs occasionally try and enter the Idle_Locked state (see subclause 11.3.2).

A PP may change between the Idle_Unlocked and the Active_Unlocked state as it wishes.

11.3.2 Entry into the Idle_Locked state

An Active_Unlocked PP occasionally scans for a DECT fixed part with which it can enter the Idle_Locked state. The timing of the start and end of this scan are controlled by the management entity which should consider such things as power consumption and SARI list length.

The scan can be achieved using PL-ME-SYNC primitives to obtain slot timing and PL-RX primitives to obtain N and Q-channel information. The Q-channel information allows frame, multi-frame, and receiver scan synchronisation to be obtained.

The PP uses a MAC-ME-INFO.Ind primitive to pass a PARI or a SARI to the management entity. The management entity issues a MAC-ME-INFO.Res containing the PARI only if it identifies an acceptable ARI.

The PP should then use PL-ME-SIG_STR and PL-RX primitives to select the RFP (that transmits the above PARI) with the strongest signal strength.

If the PP wishes to enter the Idle_Locked state it shall extract all the transmitted Q_T information that is necessary for all the MAC and physical layer service types that it can use.

Example : If a PP can implement encryption and only B-field connection setups, it has to receive the "multiframe number" and the "fixed part capabilities" messages.

After this Q_T information has been obtained, the PP may enter the Idle_Locked state.

11.3.3 Actions in the Idle_Locked state

In the Idle_Locked state, the PP shall maintain frame and multiframe synchronism with the FP and may occasionally scan for RFPs with a stronger signal strength. If a stronger RFP is found, then the PP may lock to this RFP instead. In addition the PP should be able to receive paging messages and may provide the means to detect connection setup attempts from the FP (fast setup).

In order to remain in the Idle_Locked state the PP shall :

- resynchronise its timing with the FP's timing at least every 8 multiframe (refer to ETS 300 175-2 [2]);
- receive in frame 0 at least one A-field with correct CRC every T207 seconds; and
- receive at least one N_T type tail containing the PARI in the MAC-ME-INFO.Res primitive every T208 seconds.

If any of these conditions are not met, the PP shall enter either the Active_Unlocked state or the Idle_Unlocked state.

At any time an Idle_Locked PP may leave this state and enter either the Active_Unlocked state or the Idle_Unlocked state.

11.3.3.1 Page detection in Idle_Locked state

In Idle_Locked state the PP should receive the B_S-channel. To provide this function three typical modes of operation for an Idle_Locked PP are described below.

High duty cycle Idle_Locked mode: the PP receives all B_S-channel data that is transmitted in frames 0, 2, 4, 6, 10, and 12 of the multiframe sequence. High duty cycle Idle_Locked mode enables a PP to receive fast pages (see subclause 9.1.3)

NOTE 1: Higher layer functions are used to ascertain whether a PP is likely to respond to fast paging (refer to ETS 300 175-5 [5]).

Normal Idle_Locked mode: the PP at least receives any B_S-channel data transmitted in frame 0 and in any additional frames that are commanded by the extend flag.

Low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode: in at least one out of every four multiframes the PP shall attempt to receive any B_S-channel data transmitted in frame 0 and in any additional frames that are commanded by the extend flag. Unless the FP broadcasts that low duty Idle_Locked mode is supported (see "fixed part capabilities", subclause 7.2.3.4) the PP shall not enter this mode.

NOTE 2: PPs in low duty cycle Idle_Locked mode do normally not receive long page messages which are used by higher layers for connectionless downlink services.

11.3.3.2 Setup detection in Idle_Locked state

PPs may allow FPs to setup a connection without prior paging. This process is called fast setup and described in subclause 10.2.3.

NOTE 1: Higher layer functions are used to ascertain whether a PP is likely to respond to fast setups attempts.

To provide the fast setup capability the PP's receiver scan sequence is synchronised with that of the RFP (see subclause 11.9). It receives in every slot on the scanned RF carrier and is looking for a "bearer request" message containing its own PMID.

NOTE 2: The RFP transmissions do not indicate the first transmission with a special header coding.

NOTE 3: For RFP transmissions, the "Paging tail (P_T)" uses the same header coding as the "First PT transmission" header code. The correct meaning of this coding shall be implied by the direction of transmission. See subclause 7.1.2.

11.3.4 Idle_Locked and Active_Locked state transitions

Entry into the Active_Locked state can only be achieved from the Idle_Locked state. This transition is achieved by the establishment of a connection, as described in subclause 10.2.

When an Active_Locked PP releases its last existing connection, it shall return to the Idle_Locked state.

11.4 Physical channel selection

11.4.1 The channel selection lists

Prior to the first transmission on any bearer DECT RFPs and PPs have to select physical channels. To find appropriate channels the channels shall be ordered according to the measured field strength.

The term "channel" refers to the relevant physical channel of a TDD pair (i.e. two time slots using the same frequency, and starting points of the time slots are separated by 0,5 frame). The RSSI measurement in the

relevant physical channel determines the selection performance for one or both physical channels of a TDD pair. The choice of the relevant physical channel of a TDD pair depends on the wanted bearer type.

a) Duplex bearer:

for a duplex bearer the relevant physical channel is the receiving physical channel, e.g. for a PP the RSSI measurement in slot 3 on frequency f_x defines the selection performance to use slot pair (3/15) on this frequency as a duplex bearer.

b) Double simplex bearer:

for a double simplex bearer the relevant physical channel is that channel of the TDD pair with the higher measured field strength, e.g. for a PP the higher of the RSSI values measured in slots 3 and 15 on frequency f_x defines the selection performance to use slot pair (3/15) on this frequency as a double simplex uplink bearer.

c) Simplex bearer:

for a simplex bearer the relevant physical channel in the transmitter is different for PPs and RFPs. For PPs it is the receiving TDD half of the desired physical channel, e.g. the RSSI measurement in slot 3 on frequency f_x defines the selection performance to use slot 15 on this frequency as an uplink simplex bearer. For RFPs it is that channel of the TDD pair with the higher measured field strength.

Table 70

Wanted bearer type	Relevant physical channel of the TDD pair	
	Selection by a PP	Selection by an RFP
duplex	channel in normal receiving TDD half frame	channel in normal receiving TDD half frame
simplex	channel in normal receiving TDD half frame	channel with higher measured RSSI
double simplex	channel with higher measured RSSI	channel with higher measured RSSI

The resolution of the RSSI measurement shall be better than or equal to 6 dB as defined in ETS 300 175-2 [2]. The lowest boundary shall be equal or less than - 93 dBm. Channels with a measured RSSI of less than this lowest boundary are considered as quiet channels, and may be immediately selected for a bearer setup attempt. An upper limit may be defined where a channel is considered to be busy. Channels with a RSSI of more than this upper limit need not be ordered with a resolution of 6 dB, but these channels shall not be selected for a bearer setup attempt. Channels with a measured field strength which lies between these two boundaries shall be ordered according to the measured field strength into "n" bands. The RSSI difference of all channels within the same band shall not exceed 6 dB.

NOTE 1: The upper limit may be a variable which depends on the interference environment. Nevertheless the upper limit can not exceed the highest field strength for which a receiver guarantees a RSSI measurement resolution of 6 dB.

The description above leads to the "n"-bandbin model, given in figure 102 below.

RSSI	δ RSSI	band	comment
> max dBm	∞	busy	busy, don't try
. . .	≤ 6 dB	b(n)	p o s s i b l e c a n d i d a t e s
	≤ 6 dB	b(4)	
	≤ 6 dB	b(3)	
	≤ 6 dB	b(2)	
	≤ 6 dB	b(1)	
< min dBm	∞	quiet	quiet, always allowed

max dBm : upper limit, not specified
 min dBm : lower limit, ≤ -93 dBm

Figure 102

Depending on the wanted bearer type a basic channel list can be modelled where a quality assignment based on the measured RSSI exists for each TDD pair of physical channels, i.e. for each slot pair of each frequency. The quality assignment is either a band number (b(1), ... ,b(n)), a "busy" sign or a "quiet" sign.

The basic channel list describes the overall DECT interference environment for a given upper limit "max" and does not depend on any system restrictions. It is not required that DECT equipments set up a complete basic channel list. However, different slot types require different channel lists.

In reality there might exist channels which cannot be measured or used.

Example 1 : A DECT equipment may be unable to use slot pair (4/16) on frequency f_x having at the same time an established bearer on slot pair (3/15) and frequency f_y .

Example 2 : A DECT equipment may be unable to measure the RSSI in slot 15 and frequency f_x while having a bearer established in slot pair (3/15) and frequency f_y .

Example 3 : An RFP may not be allowed to support all 10 DECT frequencies.

A modified channel list shall therefore take into account all known restrictions. "busy" is used below as a general term for channels that shall not be used. A DECT equipment shall be able to create a modified channel list with following properties:

- a) all entries of own blind slots or blind TDD channel pairs shall be regarded as busy;
- b) not supported frequencies at the FP shall be regarded as busy.

NOTE 2: The information concerning frequencies that are not supported at the FP are broadcast by the FP with the static system information message (see subclause 7.2.3.2).

The following deviations are allowed for the modified channel list:

- a) if all possible candidates are below the lower limit "min", the list of quiet channels need not be complete.
- b) the uppermost band of possible candidates (band b(n)) need not be complete, i.e. there might exist channels belonging to b(n) which are regarded as "busy". Nevertheless, the bands below the band b(n) as well as the list of quiet channels have to be complete.

NOTE 3: These two deviations allow the RFP or PP to only create a list of m candidate channels which are quiet and/or the quietest channels. Here the upper limit "max" is a variable and depends on the interference environment. All except the m quietest channels are regarded as "busy".

In addition further channels may be regarded as busy due to restrictions at the far end, e.g. received blind slot or POOR channel information.

NOTE 4: Blind slot information is temporary and specific for each RFP of an FP.

PPs should take into consideration a recognised connectionless downlink bearer or a dummy bearer of the locked RFP.

NOTE 5: The PP's RSSI measurement for the channel used by the RFP for the broadcast or connectionless service will normally lead to the decision not to select it. Nevertheless this channel may be the preferred channel for a new bearer, e.g. a connectionless uplink bearer or a duplex bearer when allowed (see fixed part capabilities, subclause 7.2.3.4).

The maintenance of the modified channel list may be done regularly or upon need, subject to rules in subclauses 11.4.2 and 11.4.3.

11.4.2 Physical channel and RFP selection at the PP

A PP shall be in a locked state (Idle_Locked or Active_Locked) before it may start transmission on a physical channel.

The initial set up should be performed so as to always connect to the strongest possible RFP, and it shall use the signal strength values obtained with PL-ME-SIG_STR primitives as a criteria. Therefore it is recommended to make at least 3 attempts to the strongest RFP before selecting the next strongest RFP.

The selection of physical channels shall be subject to all of the following rules:

- a) for a duplex bearer the TDD pair including the dummy bearer may only be selected when allowed (see subclause 7.2.3.4);
- b) unless the selected channel has a measured RSSI that meets the "quiet" criterion (see subclause 11.4.1), the complete modified channel list shall have been updated within the last T209 seconds;
- c) channels marked as "busy" shall not be selected;

- d) for bearer handover and for setting up the pilot channel of an I_N _normal_delay or an Ip service:
 - d1) if the quietest unselected channel is marked as "quiet": if none of the unselected quiet channels can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of bands b(1) or b(2) may be selected; otherwise a quiet channel shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - d2) if the quietest unselected channel is in band b(x), $x < (n-1)$: If none of the unselected channels in band b(x) can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of bands b(x+1) or b(x+2) may be selected; otherwise a channel of band b(x) shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - d3) if the quietest unselected channel is in band b(n-1): If none of the unselected channels in band b(n-1) can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of band b(n) may be selected; otherwise a channel of band b(n-1) shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - d4) if the quietest unselected channel is in the highest band b(n): A channel in band b(n) shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
- e) for all other bearer establishments:
 - e1) unless all channels marked as "quiet" have been selected at least once, no channel of the bands b(1) to b(n) shall be selected;
 - e2) unless all channels of the bands b(1) to b(x-1) have been selected at least once, no channels of the band b(x) shall be selected;
- f) in any time window of T210 seconds the number of channel selections shall not exceed the value N202 multiplied by a factor which depends on the number of required bearers (see table below).

The number of required duplex and double simplex bearers is calculated as the difference between the target number of bearers and the number of already established bearers at the beginning of the time interval.

Table 71

Number of required bearers	Maximum number of selections
1	1 * N202
2 - 3	2 * N202
4 - 7	3 * N202
8 - 15	4 * N202
> 15	5 * N202

NOTE 1: For uplink simplex bearers a lower limit is defined in subclause 9.2.1.

NOTE 2: For multibearer connections a complete set of channels may be selected at the start of the connection establishment procedure using the channel selection rules. The parallel setup attempts of the multibearer connection may then use these selected channels in any order (for example the order of known receiver scanning and/or an order indicated by received channel list messages).

- g) unless a "GOOD" or a "LISTEN" channel list message or "acceptable channel" information is received a channel shall not be reselected for access to the same RFP until the modified channel list has been completely updated;

- h) a channel may only be selected if it is checked within the last 2 frames before the first transmission, and the RSSI shall not be more than 12 dB stronger than the previous value (checking channels: see subclause 11.4.1);

Example: Having made a RSSI measurement with a 6 dB resolution the channel may still be selected for a new bearer when it belongs to band $b(x+1)$, assuming the channel was previously in band $b(x)$. The channel shall not be selected for a new bearer if it belongs to a band higher than $b(x+1)$.

- i) the PP may use information from the RFP (e.g. "acceptable channel" or "channel list" information) to aid its choice of channel. Nevertheless, rules a) to h) shall not be violated.

NOTE 3: For simplex uplink bearers this selection procedure is only applied when no dummy or C/L downlink bearer has been found. Otherwise the TDD pair of this downlink bearer has to be chosen for the uplink (see subclause 9.2.2).

In addition to these rules it is recommended not to use any channel pair for setting up a duplex or a double simplex bearer to a specific RFP when a C/L downlink or a dummy bearer of another RFP was recognised in the normal receive channel of the PP (slot 0..11).

11.4.3 Physical channel selection at the RFP

For an FT initiated setup of a duplex bearer (fast setup, see subclause 10.5.1.3) and for setting up a double simplex downlink bearer (refer to subclause 10.5.1.4) the RFP shall know the receiver scanning sequence of the PP before it may transmit a "bearer request" message on a physical channel.

For the creation of a dummy bearer following the termination of all other bearers at an RFP, the RFP should select without interruption the channel previously occupied by the last active downlink bearer. The selection of physical channels in all other circumstances or if this recommendation is not followed shall be subject to all of the following rules:

- a) unless the selected channel has a measured RSSI that meets the "quiet" criterion (see subclause 11.4.1), the complete modified channel list shall have been updated within the last T209 seconds;
- b) channels marked as "busy" shall not be selected;
- c) for setting up the pilot bearer and for bearer handover of a double simplex bearer when the RFP is in operation as the T-Side:
- c1) if the quietest unselected channel is marked as "quiet". If none of the unselected quiet channels can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of bands $b(1)$ or $b(2)$ may be selected; otherwise a quiet channel shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - c2) if the quietest unselected channel is in band $b(x)$, $x < (n-1)$. If none of the unselected channels in band $b(x)$ can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of bands $b(x+1)$ or $b(x+2)$ may be selected; otherwise a channel of band $b(x)$ shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - c3) if the quietest unselected channel is in band $b(n-1)$. If none of the unselected channels in band $b(n-1)$ can be accessed within the next three TDMA frames, a channel of band $b(n)$ may be selected; otherwise a channel of band $b(n-1)$ shall be selected for the next setup attempt;
 - c4) if the quietest unselected channel is in the highest band $b(n)$. A channel in band $b(n)$ shall be selected for the next setup attempt.

- d) For all other bearer establishments:
 - d1) unless all channels marked as "quiet" have been selected at least once, no channel of the bands b(1) to b(n) shall be selected;
 - d2) unless all channels of the bands b(1) to b(x-1) have been selected at least once, no channels of the band b(x) shall be selected.
- e) in any time window of T210 seconds the number of channel selections shall not exceed the value N202 multiplied by a factor which depends on the number of required bearers (see table below);

The number of required double simplex bearers is calculated as the difference between the target number of bearers and the number of already established bearers at the beginning of the time interval.

Table 72

Number of required bearers	Maximum number of selections
1	1 * N202
2 - 3	2 * N202
4 - 7	3 * N202
8 - 15	4 * N202
> 15	5 * N202

NOTE 1: Only one dummy or C/L downlink bearer is allowed. Setting up this simplex downlink bearer needs only one selection. Therefore no limit for simplex downlink bearer is needed.

NOTE 2: For multibearer connections a complete set of channels may be selected at the start of the connection establishment procedure using the channel selection rules. The parallel setup attempts of the multibearer connection may then use these selected channels in any order (for example the order of known receiver scanning and/or an order indicated by received channel list messages).

- f) unless a GOOD or a LISTEN channel list message is received a channel shall not be reselected for access to the same PP until the modified channel list has been completely updated;
- g) a channel may only be selected if it is checked within the last 2 frames before the first transmission, and the RSSI shall not be more than 12 dB stronger than the previous value (checking channels: see subclause 11.4.1);

Example: Having made a RSSI measurement with a 6 dB resolution the channel may still be selected for a new bearer when it belongs to band b(x+1), assuming the channel was previously in band b(x). The channel shall not be selected for a new bearer if it belongs to a band higher than b(x+1).

- h) the RFP may use information from the PP (e.g. CHANNEL_LIST information) to aid its choice of channel. Nevertheless rules a) to g) shall not be violated.

In addition to these rules it is recommended not to use any channel pair for setting up any bearer when a C/L downlink or a dummy bearer of a neighbour RFP was recognised in the normal transmit channel of the RFP (slot 0..11).

11.4.4 In-connection base identification (handover criteria)

Bearer and connection handover should be performed so as to always connect to the strongest (free) RFP, and it should use channel quality and shall use the signal strength values, the latter obtained using the procedure specified in ETS 300 175-2 [2] as a criteria. Information from MAC "channel list" messages may also be used.

11.5 In-connection quality control

11.5.1 RFPI handshake

A radio endpoint shall release a bearer if it has not received the correct RFPI with a correct CRC on that bearer in the last T201 seconds.

11.5.2 Frequency control

11.5.2.1 RFP measurement of frequency error

Provided the RFP supports frequency control the frequency error of the received physical packets is reported in the PL-RX.Cfm primitive. If the frequency error is too large (when averaged over a suitably long time) a frequency control request is sent to the PT (see subclauses 7.2.5.5 and 7.3.5).

If the RFP receives a frequency control reject message, it shall not send any more frequency control message to that PT.

11.5.2.2 PT frequency correction

When a frequency control request message is received by the MAC layer in the PT, it sends an appropriate PL-FREQ_ADJ Req primitive to its physical layer.

In response to a PL-FREQ_ADJ Req primitive the Physical layer may issue a PL-FREQ_ADJ Cfm primitive, indicating that frequency control is not supported. A PP's MAC layer receiving this primitive may send a frequency reject message to the requesting RFP.

11.6 Maximum allowed system load at RFPs

In any frame the maximum capacity occupied by traffic bearers at an RFP shall not exceed 14.4 half slots per TDMA frame, multiplied by the number of RF carriers available to the DECT system, as regulated by the national authorities.

NOTE: One half slot traffic bearer occupies two half slots;
one full slot traffic bearer occupies four half slot;
one double slot traffic bearer occupies eight half slots.

11.7 PMID and FMID definitions

11.7.1 FMID definition

FMID is supplied to the MAC layer from the management entity.

Only one derivation is defined for the FMID:

FMID = least significant 12 bits of RFPI

RFPI is the radio fixed part identity and is defined in ETS 300 175-6 [6].

NOTE: Each RFP of the same FP has a geographically unique FMID.

11.7.2 PMID definition

PMID is a 20 bit ID derived within the MAC layer.

Two derivations for the PMID are defined. The derivation depends on whether the PT has an assigned individual TPUI or a default TPUI. TPUI is the temporary portable subscriber identity and is defined in ETS 300 175-6 [6]. The correct PMID is supplied to the portable MAC layer by the management entity.

If an assigned individual TPUI exists the PMID shall be equal to this TPUI, otherwise the PMID is derived arbitrarily with the most significant four bits set to "11110".

NOTE: In the latter case the PMID may be set to the default TPUI.

The PMID is recalculated for every new connection setup attempt.

11.8 RFP idle receiver scan sequence

In every slot a receiver in an RFP is either **active**, or **scanning**, or **idling**.

The receiver is **active** if it is receiving a traffic bearer used by that RFP.

Scanning is when the receiver is listening for bearer set up attempts on physical channels. If the receiver is **active** on a particular slot, it will be unable to **listen** in that slot on a different RF channel (however, an RFP may have more than one receiver).

Idle is a non-preferred state. It implies that the RFP is not scanning for any (more) bearer set up attempts. Receivers are (almost automatically) idle when the RFP transmits.

All RFPs within a DECT internal handover area (see ETS 300 175-6 [6]) shall operate on the same set of RF carriers.

The **primary scan** is defined as the scan that is maintained if the RFP has one or more receiver(s) free. If the RFP has more than one receiver free, it maintains **secondary** and **tertiary** scans that lag behind the **primary scan**.

All RFPs within a DECT internal handover area (see ETS 300 175-6 [6]) shall have their **primary scans** on the same RF carrier at the same time.

If different systems are synchronised (e.g. via the synchronisation port), it is recommended that at any given time, the **primary scans** of these systems are on different RF carriers.

When RFPs scan the physical channels they shall do so in the order described below.

By the **primary scan** all available RF carriers shall be scanned sequentially at a rate of 1 carrier per TDMA frame. RF carriers shall be scanned in order of ascending carrier numbers.

After scanning the highest numbered available RF carrier, the receiver re-starts the **primary scan** in the following TDMA frame on the lowest numbered available carrier.

An RFP shall listen to all slots in which a PP transmission on a new bearer can be accepted.

NOTE: An RFP of an FP that does not support asymmetric connections may be idle during slots 0 to 11. These are the normal RFP transmit slots.

The RFP uses the Q_T messages to broadcast on which RF carrier its primary scan will be in the next frame. These messages also give the number of transceivers at the RFP (thus giving an indication of whether a secondary or tertiary scan exists) and the number of RF carriers that exist.

Secondary receiver scan lags behind the **primary** receiver scan by 6 TDMA frames.

The tertiary receiver scan lags behind the **primary** receiver scan by 3 TDMA frames.

The operation of any additional **idle** receiver(s) is not defined.

Broadcast blind slot information should reflect the primary receiver scan sequence (refer to subclause 7.2.4.3.3).

In order to optimise system performance for multiple transceiver RFPs, the RFPs should maintain active bearers in the following order of preference:

- a) on any available transceiver without an active receiver scan in operation;
- b) on the transceiver with the tertiary receiver scan;
- c) on the transceiver with the secondary receiver scan;
- d) on the transceiver with the primary receiver scan.

An RFP that has an extended frequency allocation and uses one or more of the basic DECT frequencies shall transmit "static_system_information" with a PSCN set equal to one of the basic DECT frequencies at least once every 32 multiframes. Furthermore, the "extended_RF_carriers" message shall contain the number of RF carriers being scanned at that RFP.

11.9 PT fast set up receiver scan sequence

The PT should arrange its receiver scanning sequence such that it scans the same sequence of channels as the primary scan (see subclause 11.8) at the chosen RFP. The PT scan sequence should lead the RFP (primary) scan by one frame, as shown in figure 103 below.

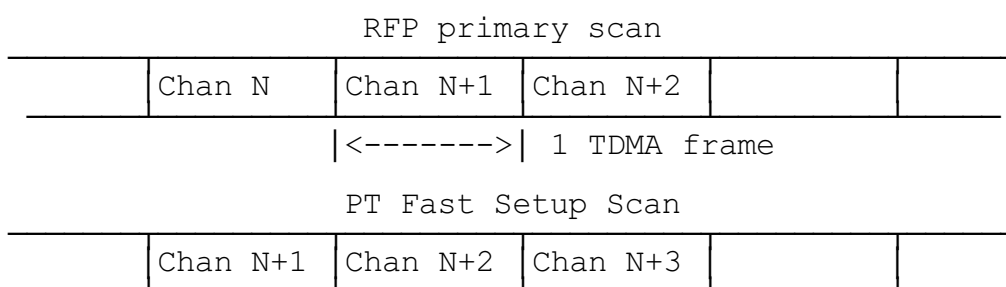


Figure 103

12 Medium access layer test message procedure

12.1 Introduction

For the purpose of testing, DECT equipment capable of transmitting shall recognise the set of test messages sent by the testing system as defined in this ETS. The ability to recognise and implement these messages is contained in the Implementation Under Test (IUT). The response of the IUT to these messages is dependant on the equipment type.

NOTE 1: DECT equipment not capable of transmitting shall not be required to recognise these messages.

NOTE 2: Implementation Under Test (IUT is equivalent to Equipment Under Test (EUT).

Subclause 7.2.5.4 of this specification defines the test messages.

12.2 General

The ability to recognise and implement the test messages is resident in the medium access control layer of the IUT. Execution of these messages are inhibited unless the IUT, in addition to the normal mode operation, is also in the test standby mode. The test standby mode is invoked by some means of manual switching in the IUT (e.g. dip-switch, jumper, or key-pad code as designated by the manufacturer) to prevent accidental execution of these messages in a normal DECT environment.

Receipt of a test message causes the IUT to enter the appropriate test mode(s). The IUT shall stay in the test mode(s) indefinitely or until a "clear test modes" message is received. Receipt of this message shall clear all previously enabled test modes and return the IUT to the test standby mode. See figure 104.

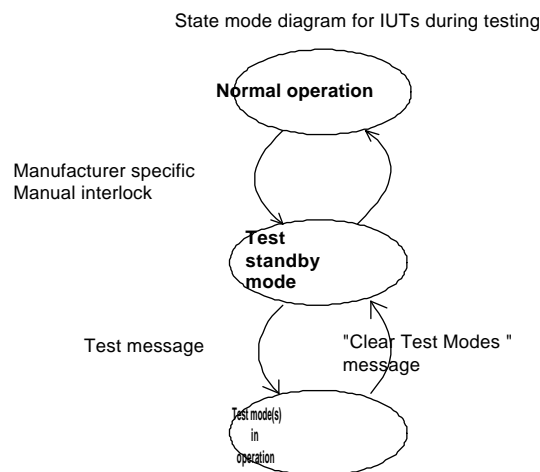


Figure 104: State mode diagram for IUTs during testing

After switching to the test standby mode and before the receipt of the test messages the IUT shall have no active bearers other than those initiated by the LT.

The IUT shall be able to be switched out of the test standby mode by the same means of manual switching as described above or by powering down the IUT. The tester should not transmit any test messages before the IUT has entered the test standby mode.

No more than one test message per multiframe shall be sent to the IUT. If, however, the manufacturer declares to the testing authority that the IUT is able to execute test messages at a higher rate, then the test messages shall be allowed to be sent at this higher rate.

Test messages are arranged into two groups. The first group comprises those messages which cause the IUT to enter a static mode of operation. The second group is dynamic. The IUT does not enter a permanent test mode after execution of the test message, i.e. the dynamic test message invokes a temporary test mode. These two groups are listed below:

Static Modes

- a) FORCE_TRANSMIT
- b) LOOPBACK_DATA
- c) DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY

Dynamic Modes

- a) FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER
- b) CLEAR_TEST_MODES

All of the static test modes shall be able to be in operation at the same time.

The ESCAPE test message is neither static or dynamic; it serves to notify the IUT of the presence of a proprietary test message in the subsequent data bits.

For a detailed description of the test procedures utilising the test messages, refer to I-ETS 300 176 [12].

12.2.1 Portable part testing

Entry into the test standby mode is from the normal Idle_Locked state. Once in the test standby mode, the IUT shall receive in at least all frames in the first half of a multiframe and all slots declared as being supported. Test messages shall be transmitted by the testing system in the first half of a multiframe and, except for force bearer handover, the IUT shall execute the message within the second half of the same multiframe. Execution of the force bearer handover message shall be completed within 4 multiframe.

The PP shall be able to receive and process the test messages described in subclause 7.2.5.4. The PP shall be able to receive M_T tails sent on a dummy bearer in any frame allowed by the T-MUX algorithm if no bearers currently exist.

NOTE: The test message shall be sent by the LT in an M_T tail using a dummy bearer if no bearers currently exist otherwise they shall be sent on an existing bearer.

12.2.2 Fixed part testing

The FP shall be able to receive and process the test messages described in subclause 7.2.5.4 on a bearer that has been initiated by the LT.

Entry into the test standby mode is from the Active_Idle state. Test messages shall be transmitted by the testing system in the first half of a multiframe and the IUT shall execute the message in the second half of the same multiframe.

12.2.3 Applicability of test messages

For the purposes of testing, DECT equipment is divided into two equipment category types: CI-BASE equipment and CI-PROFILE equipment (see Clauses 8 and 9 of ETS 300 175-1). CI-BASE equipment are those implementations which do not adhere to an ETSI approved operating profile. CI-PROFILE equipment are those implementations which comply with an ETSI approved operating profile (e.g. Public Access Profile (PAP)). Figure 105 details the test messages that are required to be supported by the IUT for each equipment category type.

Test Message	CI-BASE	CI-PROFILE	CI-PROFILE-PLUS
FORCE_TRANSMIT	Understand	Understand	Understand
LOOPBACK_DATA	Understand (NOTE 4)	Understand (NOTE 4)	Understand (NOTE 4)
DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY	Understand (NOTE 2)	Understand (NOTE 2)	Understand (NOTE 2)
FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER	Ignore	Understand	Understand
NETWORK_TEST	Ignore	Understand	Understand
ESCAPE	Ignore	Ignore	Ignore
CLEAR_TEST_MODES	Understand	Understand	Understand

NOTE 1: All DECT equipment, upon receipt of a test message, shall not malfunction regardless of the applicability of the message.

NOTE 2: If equipment is declared as having antenna diversity or possessing more than one switchable antenna.

NOTE 3: Equipment that is capable of operating in more than one of the above modes shall be tested in each mode seperately.

NOTE 4: For fixed parts, loopback is described in subclause 12.4.2.

Figure 105: DECT equipment categories and test messages

12.3 FORCE_TRANSMIT

12.3.1 Portable part

On receipt of this message, all DECT equipment capable of transmitting shall setup a bearer on the slot number, start position, and frequency specified in this message and shall listen for other messages received on this established bearer and act upon them as appropriate.

NOTE 1: This test message is sent from the LT to the IUT prior to all other test messages. This enables the other test messages to be sent on this established bearer.

NOTE 2: Where the IUTs transmitted data requires control by the LT, this message is followed by the LOOPBACK_DATA test message.

The IUT remains in this mode until the CLEAR_TEST_MODES or (if applicable) FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER message is received. Receipt of other test messages shall not terminate this mode.

NOTE 3: Combinations of slot pairs that are declared by the manufacturer as not being supported in the IUT for this test shall not be selected by the testing system.

If there exists a bearer at the time the IUT receives the FORCE_TRANSMIT message, the IUT shall first examine the status of the "keep previous" bit to determine whether to release the current bearer. If the "keep previous" bit is set to "1", the IUT shall not release the old bearer. The IUT shall execute the appropriate setup procedure at the new slot and frequency indicated in the FORCE_TRANSMIT message. If the "keep previous" bit is set to "0", the IUT shall first release any existing bearers before performing the call setup.

NOTE 4: The maximum number of bearers active at any time shall not exceed the declared limit of the IUT.

NOTE 5: A manufacturer could include a multi-bearer force transmit test message as part of a proprietary test message set.

If the "handover disable" bit is set to "1" then bearer and connection handover shall be disabled. See subclause 7.2.5.4.2.

12.3.2 Fixed part

The IUT shall allow bearer setup using any PMID while in the test standby mode. In addition, the IUT shall proceed with the bearer setup request on the slot pair on which the bearer setup request was received.

NOTE 1: The LT will initiate bearers with the IUT using the normal bearer setup procedures described in subclause 10.2, and in this way controls the transmissions of the IUT.

NOTE 2: The FORCE_TRANSMIT test message is not used when the IUT is a FP.

The IUT shall listen for other messages received on this established bearer.

The IUT remains in this mode until the CLEAR_TEST_MODES message is received. Receipt of other test messages shall not terminate this mode.

DECT equipment utilising only the connectionless services shall not limit the number of successive transmissions.

12.4 LOOPBACK_DATA

Loopback is that process by which data received in one slot is used to compose the data to be transmitted in the next half-frame. The sequence of the bits and their values as transmitted by the IUT is identical with the sequence of the bits and their values as received by the IUT.

For DECT equipment capable of setting up a bearer, the IUT must have a bearer existing before this message can be executed by the IUT. If no bearer exists when the test message is transmitted by the tester, the IUT shall ignore this message.

DECT equipment utilising only A-field transmissions shall loopback bits a_{16} to a_{47} of the A-field. The IUT shall not limit the number of successive transmissions.

DECT equipment capable of B-field transmission shall loopback bits b_0 to b_{79} for half-slot implementations or bits b_0 to b_{319} for full-slot implementations. Equipment supporting both half- and full-slot operation shall loopback bits b_0 to b_{319} . The A-field loopback shall not be used.

DECT equipment capable of transmitting double-slots shall loopback bits b_0 to b_{799} . Equipment supporting half- and/or full-slots in addition to the double-slot shall loopback bits b_0 to b_{799} . The A-field loopback shall not be used.

12.4.1 Portable part

The point at which loopback occurs in the MAC of the IUT can be above or below the scrambling functions of the IUT.

If a FORCE_BEARER_HANDOVER message is received after receipt of the LOOPBACK_DATA message, the IUT shall continue to operate in the loopback mode after execution of the bearer handover procedure. The IUT may transmit the loopback data on both bearers during execution of its bearer handover procedure. The IUT shall continue to operate in the loopback mode until receipt of the CLEAR_TEST_MODES or power down of the unit.

12.4.2 Fixed Part

12.4.2.1 IUTs implementing the DECT scrambler

The point of loopback in the MAC of the IUT may occur above and below any scrambling functions of the IUT.

12.4.2.2 IUTs implementing a proprietary scrambler

The point of loopback in the MAC of the IUT shall occur below any scrambling functions of the IUT.

NOTE: "Below" means without passing through the scrambling functions of the IUT.

12.5 DEFEAT_ANTENNA_DIVERSITY

All equipment equipped with antenna diversity shall respond to this message. The antenna selected by this message shall be used for both receive and transmit. The IUT stays on the selected antenna until a new antenna is selected or the "clear test modes" message is received.

12.6 FORCE_BEARER_HANOVER

This message is recognised only by CI-PROFILE equipment capable of transmitting a traffic bearer. The IUT must have a duplex bearer existing before this message is executed. If there are no duplex bearer(s) between the IUT and testing system at the time of reception of this message, the IUT shall ignore this message.

12.7 NETWORK_TEST

This message is used to invoke testing procedures resident in the network layer. The 32 bit SDU is passed through the ME SAP to the LLME. No further action is required. The network test message is recognized only by CI-PROFILE equipment.

12.8 ESCAPE

Proprietary test messages resident in an IUT shall be declared by the manufacturer to the testing authority before testing may begin. Any transmission of a proprietary test message shall be preceded by the ESCAPE message in the same transmission. Proprietary test message(s) shall occupy bit positions a_{16} to a_{47} of the A-field. All implementations shall recognise the ESCAPE test message, however, EUTs not implementing proprietary test message(s) shall ignore the ESCAPE message.

12.9 CLEAR_TEST_MODES

The CLEAR_TEST_MODES message is used as a "reset" function. Its purpose is to force the IUT back to the test standby mode. Receipt of this message shall clear all previously enabled static test modes (including static proprietary modes) and return the IUT to the test standby mode within 16 frames.

Annex A (normative): MAC layer timers and constants

A.1 Timers and Time Windows

T200 = 3 seconds:	connection setup timer; subclause 10.2.
T201 = 5 seconds:	time-out for bearer failure; subclause 11.5.
T202 = 3 seconds:	handover timer/window; subclause 10.6.
T203 = 16 frames :	max. time to maintain 2 bearers during handover; subclause 10.6.
T204 = 6 multiframe:	time-out for sending page messages; subclause 9.1.
T205 = 10 seconds:	max. time between N _T tails in frame 0 of a multiframe; subclause 9.1.
T206 = 10 frames:	max. respond time for extended system information; subclause 11.2.
T207 = 5 seconds:	max. time between reception of a correct A-field in idle mode; subclause 11.3.
T208 = 20 seconds:	max. time between reception of a N _T message in idle mode; subclause 11.3.
T209 = 30 seconds:	max. time between update of channel list; subclause 11.4.
T210 = 2 seconds:	time window for max. N ₂₀₂ channel selections; subclause 11.4.
T211 = 3 seconds:	connection modification timer; subclause 10.3.
T212 = 20 frames:	time to acknowledge a double simplex bearer setup; subclause 10.5.
T213 = 20 frames:	time to acknowledge a double simplex bearer release; subclause 10.7.
T214 = 20 frames:	C/L uplink service: maximum time to search for a dummy or connectionless bearer; subclause 9.2.
T215 = 6 multiframe:	interval for max. N ₂₀₃ C/L uplink transmissions; subclause 9.2.

A.2 Constants

N200 = 10:	max. number of MAC setup reattempts during connection setup; subclause 10.2.
N201 = 15:	max. number of handover reattempts in T ₂₀₂ sec. ; subclause 10.6.
N202 = 10:	max. number of channel selections in T ₂₁₀ seconds; subclause 11.4.
N203 = 6:	max number of C/L uplink transmissions in any interval of T ₂₁₅ multiframe; subclause 9.2.

Annex B (informative): Construction of the CRC polynomial and error detecting performance

The factorisation of the polynomial $g(x)$ results in:

$$g(x) = M_7(13)(x) * M_7(29)(x) * (x+1)^2$$

$$202'611 = 203 * 253 * (3)^2 \text{ (octal) .}$$

$M_7^{(i)}(x)$ denotes the minimal polynomial of \hat{A}^i where \hat{A} is the primitive element of $GF(2^7)$ used in Appendix C of Peterson and Weldon "Error correcting codes" [20].

The product of $M_7(13)(x) * M_7(29)(x)$ results in a generator polynomial for a primitive binary (127,113) BCH code with minimum Hamming distance of 5. Multiplying this polynomial with $(x+1)^2$ gives the generator polynomial $g(x)$. For different data block lengths n the minimum Hamming distance d_{min} for the (m,n) block code generated with $g(x)$ is given in table B.1 below.

Table B.1

d_{min}	$m = n + 16$
6	17 - 128
4	129 - 254
2	≥ 255

The polynomial $g(x)$ has the minimum number of non zero coefficients for codes with $d_{min} = 6$.

For $17 \leq n \leq 128$ the resulting (m,n) block code provides the following error detection properties:

- detect all odd number of errors;
- any error pattern with less than 6 errors; and
- any error-burst up to length 16.

Because a BCH code is included, up to double error correcting may be applied.

Annex C (informative): MAC relationship to other layers

A complete DECT fixed radio termination may contain several independent cells, where each cell contains one independent physical layer instance (independent radio transceivers).

The MAC layer provides an intermediate level of grouping between these distributed physical layers and the single (central) instance of the higher layers. This intermediate grouping is termed a (MAC) cluster, where one cluster represents a single MAC layer instance. A complete FT may thereby contain two levels of hierarchy:

- one FT may contain multiple independent MAC clusters (MAC layer instances);
- each cluster may control multiple independent PHL cells (physical layer instances).

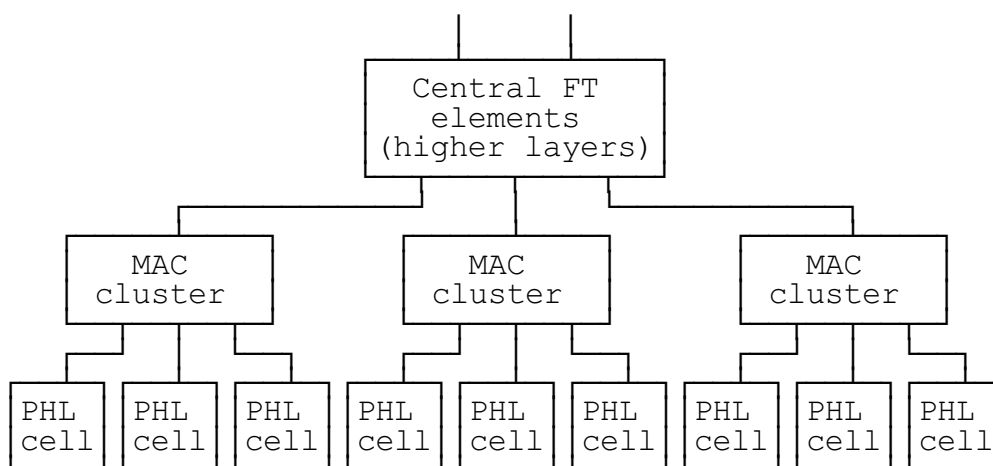


Figure C.1: FT with multiple MAC clusters

NOTE: This divisions in this picture do not correspond to physical boundaries.

The independent lower instances of MAC and PHL are all accessed via independent sets of service access points. The MAC functional groupings correspond to these independent SAPs.

The single instance of MAC cluster control functions relate to the single set of upper SAPs.

The multiple instances of MAC cell site functions relate to the multiple instances of lower SAPs. (There is one CSF for each PHL cell belonging to the cluster).

Annex D (informative): Synchronisation

The MAC layer, in combination with the physical layer provides synchronisation between fixed radio termination and portable radio terminations. In all cases, the FT is the timing master, and a PT is always required to synchronise to an FT before it can obtain service.

Three types of synchronisation are defined:

- slot synchronisation; refer to ETS 300 175-2 [2];
- frame synchronisation; refer to ETS 300 175-2 [2];
- multiframe synchronisation; refer to subclause 4.2.3.

Synchronisation of a PT is achieved and maintained by the reception of physical packets by the physical layer for any active slots. This provides the first level of timing. A small number of messages are then used in the Q logical channel to define frame synchronisation and multiframe synchronisation relative to this slot timing. This process is defined in subclause 6.2.2.1.

The FT transmissions are required to be frame and multi-frame synchronised at all RFPs in any one cluster. It is required that this synchronisation is maintained across a complete fixed radio termination.

At the PT, successful synchronisation is required for the PT to "lock" to the transmissions of an FT. A PT can exist in one of three synchronisation states at the MAC layer:

- 1) **Unlocked:** the PT is not synchronised to any RFP;
- 2) **Lock_pending:** the PT is receiving RFP transmissions, but has not yet obtained frame and/or multiframe synchronisation;
- 3) **Locked:** the PT has achieved frame and multi-frame lock to an RFP.

Annex E (informative): Scrambling patterns

Table E.1 below lists the first 16 bits and the last 2 bits (for both full and half slots) of the scrambling bit sequence that shall be used each frame.

The sequence repeats every 8 frames, so the sequence is the same for frames 0 and 8, and for frames 1 and 9, etc.

Table E.1

BIT NUMBER	FRAME NUMBERS							
	0 8	1 9	2 10	3 11	4 12	5 13	6 14	7 15
b ₀	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
b ₁	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
b ₂	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1
b ₃	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1
b ₄	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1
b ₅	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
b ₆	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	0
b ₇	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
b ₈	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
b ₉	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
b ₁₀	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1
b ₁₁	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0
b ₁₂	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
b ₁₃	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1
b ₁₄	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
b ₁₅	1	0	0	1	1	0	1	0
etc.								
b ₇₈	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0
b ₇₉	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
etc.								
b ₃₁₇	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
b ₃₁₈	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
b ₃₁₉	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0

Annex F (informative): Public access profile: mandatory requirements regarding the MAC layer

This Clause is a reprint of Clause 8 of ETS 300 175-9 [9] and contains the elements specified in this part of the standard. In the event of any conflict between this Annex and ETS 300 175-9 [9], the text in ETS 300 175-9 [9] shall be the prime source (i.e. ETS 300 175-9 [9] is normative).

Public access equipment shall provide at least all of the elements stated below.

F.1 MAC layer services

F.1.1 Connection oriented services

The FT and PT shall support basic connections, these are from service type 1f ($I_{N_minimum_delay}$). At least the B-field multiplex type U32a shall be supported.

F.1.2 Broadcast services

The FT shall support the continuous broadcast service.

F.2 MAC layer procedures

F.2.1 Connection oriented service procedures

F.2.1.1 General

The FT and PT shall support the basic connection set-up procedure and the A-field connection release procedure.

NOTE 1: The basic set-up procedure creates a basic connection.

The PT shall support the duplex bearer handover procedure and the connection handover procedure. If the FT does not support the connection handover procedure for intra-cell handover, the FT shall support the duplex bearer handover procedure.

NOTE 2: Support of the connection handover procedure requires the MAC to support additional messages as defined in subclause F.4.2.4.

F.2.1.2 Antenna diversity in connection oriented services

F.2.1.2.1 Q1 setting in direction PT to FT

The PT shall set $Q1 = 1$ in the next associated transmission when the quality of the received burst is determined to be poor. The determination of the received quality may be based on the following:

- a) results of the A and X-CRCs;
- b) conditions of the S and Z fields;
- c) radio signal strength;
- d) other appropriate parameters.

The Q1 bit is defined in the A-field header message, refer to ETS 300 175-3 [3].

S- and Z-field failure are defined as in ETS 300 175-2 [2]. A-CRC and X-CRC are defined in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

F.2.1.2.2 Antenna change due to FT reception of Q1

If antenna diversity is implemented, the RFP shall, on reception of $Q1 = 1$, change antenna for next associated RFP transmission unless the RFP has knowledge of the optimum downlink transmission antenna obtained from simultaneous measurements of the last PT transmission as per subclause 8.3 of ETS 300 175-2 [2] on all provided antennas.

If $Q1 = 0$ is received by the RFP in the next associated slot, the antenna should also be changed for the associated receive direction.

F.2.1.2.3 Antenna change due to poor quality on slot received at FT

If antenna diversity is implemented, the RFP shall, when the quality of the received burst is poor, change antenna. The determination of the received quality may be based on the following:

- a) results of the A and X-CRCs;
- b) conditions of the S and Z fields;
- c) radio signal strength;
- d) other appropriate parameters.

S- and Z-field failure are defined as in ETS 300 175-2 [2]. A-CRC and X-CRC are defined in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

If the next associated slot is received error free by the RFP, the antenna should also be changed for the associated transmit direction.

F.2.1.3 Information for handover

F.2.1.3.1 Q1 and Q2 setting in direction FT to PT

$Q1$ and $Q2$ shall be used in accordance with ETS 300 175-3 [3]. The $Q2$ bit shall be set according to A-field and B-field acceptance. The minimum criteria for B-field data rejection as defined in ETS 300 175-3 [3] is X-CRC failure. It is also mandated to set $Q1$ on sliding collision information if $Q2 = 1$, and on A-CRC result if $Q2 = 0$. Sliding collision is defined in ETS 300 175-2 [2] Annex B.

The $Q1$ bit and the $Q2$ bit are defined in the A-field header message, refer to ETS 300 175-3 [3].

F.2.1.3.2 PT reception of Q1 and Q2

The PT should use $Q1$ and $Q2$ information for making the handover decision.

F.2.2 Broadcast procedures

At least the following downlink broadcast procedures shall be supported by the FT:

- broadcast of N_T messages (see subclause F.4.2.1);
- broadcast of mandatory Q_T messages (see subclause F.4.2.2).

F.3 Scrambling

Scrambling of the B field as specified in ETS 300 175-3 [3] is mandatory.

F.4 Required messages

F.4.1 Header field

The FT and PT shall understand all tail identifications.

The FT and PT shall be able to send at least the tail identifications code given in table F.1 below.

Table F.1

a0	a1	a2	Tail contents	Restrictions
0	0	0	C_T data packet number 0	
0	0	1	C_T data packet number 1	
0	1	1	identities information (N_T)	
1	0	0	multiframe synchronisation and system information (Q_T)	RFP only
1	1	0	MAC layer control (M_T)	
1	1	1	first CPP transmission (M_T)	PP only
"RFP only" means RFP transmissions only "PP only" means PP transmissions only				

The FT shall react correctly to the B field identification for "U type, I_N " and shall be able to send the B field identifications for "U type, I_N " and "no B-field".

The PT shall react correctly to the B field identifications for "U type, I_N " and "no B-field" and shall be able to send the B field identification for "U type, I_N ".

The FT and PT shall be able to send and shall react correctly to the Q1 and Q2 bits using the procedures defined in subclauses F.2.1.2 and F.2.1.3.

F.4.2 Messages in the tail field

F.4.2.1 Identities information (N_T tail)

PT and FT shall be able to send, and shall react correctly to the N_T tail.

F.4.2.2 System information and multiframe marker (Q_T tail)

The FT shall be able to send and the PT shall understand at least the Q_T messages given in table F.2 below.

Table F.2

Q _H	System Information	Man	Freq
000X	static system info	Yes	8
0010	extended R _F carriers	NOTE	8
0011	fixed part capabilities	Yes	8
0101	SARI list contents	No	8
Man: Mandatory transmission (Yes/No); Freq: Maximum repeat interval in multiframes, if implemented. NOTE: Transmission of the "Extended R _F carriers" message is only mandated for FPs that support extended R _F carrier operation.			

F.4.2.3 Paging (P_T tail)

The transmission and understanding of paging messages is not required for the minimum public access profile.

F.4.2.4 MAC control (M_T tails)

PT and FT shall be able to send and shall react correctly to the following groups of messages:

- the basic connection control messages (NOTE 1);
- MAC test messages (NOTE 2).

NOTE 1: The "Unconfirmed_access_request" message shall not be used for a basic connection.

NOTE 2: Equipment shall only respond to MAC test messages when operating in the "Test-Standby-Mode". Refer to I-ETS 300 176 [12].

F.4.3 Messages in the B-field

No operations that require transmission or response to B-field messages is required for the minimum public access profile.

NOTE: Equipment shall understand the tail code associated with B-field messages as defined in subclause F.4.1. Received B-field messages should be discarded if they cannot be understood.

F.5 Monitoring of speech quality

The X-CRC information from received slot with I_N data should be used to support monitoring of received speech quality.

Annex G (informative): Public access profile: MAC layer requirements for the optional features

This Clause is a reprint of Clause 9 of ETS 300 175-9 [9] and contains the elements specified in this part of the standard. In the event of any conflict between this annex and ETS 300 175-9 [9], the text in ETS 300 175-9 [9] shall be the prime source (i.e. ETS 300 175-9 [9] is normative).

This Clause defines the MAC provisions required to support optional functionality specified in Clause 5 of ETS 300 175-9 [9].

G.1 Incoming call (feature 16)

The following additional facilities shall be provided:

The FT shall be able to send and the PT shall understand the additional tail identification code given in table G.1 below.

Table G.1

a0 a1 a2	Tail contents	Restrictions
1 1 1	paging tail (P_T)	RFP only
"RFP only" means RFP transmissions only		

The FT shall be able to send at least one of the following P_T type tail messages:

- short page message;
- full page message.

The PT shall understand both of the above listed P_T type tail messages.

The FT shall page PT in normal paging mode by using only full page messages or short page messages or both. Normal paging mode is defined in the RFP paging procedure of ETS 300 175-3 [3].

The low duty cycle idle_locked mode paging service is permitted.

The PT shall react correctly to both full page and short page messages. Detection and processing of paging messages is defined in the paging procedure of ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.2 Alphanumeric text messaging and radiopaging service (feature 32)

G.2.1 Alphanumeric service via the MAC broadcast service (case A)

The FT shall be able to send and the PT shall understand the additional tail identification (TA) code given in table G.2 below.

Table G.2

a0 a1 a2	Tail contents	Restrictions
1 1 1	paging tail (P_T)	RFP only
"RFP only" means RFP transmissions only		

The FT shall be able to send and the PT shall understand long page messages (P_T type tail messages).

For the alphanumeric service the FT shall only use long page messages in normal paging mode. This paging mode is defined in the RFP paging procedure of ETS 300 175-3 [3].

The PT shall react correctly to long page messages. Detection and processing of paging messages is defined in the paging procedure of ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.2.2 Alphanumeric service via the MAC C/L downlink service (case B1)

FT and PT shall support the requirements for incoming calls as defined in Clause G.1.

FT and PT shall support the CL_F channel. To transmit or receive CL_F channel data the multiplex E32 shall be supported.

The FT shall be able to transmit, and the PT shall understand the coding of the TA field of the A-field header given in table G.3 below.

Table G.3

a ₀ a ₁ a ₂	Tail contents	Restrictions
0 1 0	identities information (N _T) on connectionless bearer	RFP only
"RFP only" means RFP transmissions only		

Additional B-field identification codes in the A-field header are used for the C/L downlink service. These are given in table G.4 below.

Table G.4

a ₄ , a ₅ , a ₆	B field contents
0 1 0	E type, all CL _F
1 0 0	E type, not all CL _F
1 1 0	E type, all MAC control (unnumbered)

The FT shall be able to transmit and the PT shall understand these additional BA codes.

The FT shall be able to transmit and the PT shall understand the MAC B-field "null" message.

The FT and PT shall support the downlink connectionless procedure as defined in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.2.3 Alphanumeric service via the MAC C/L downlink and uplink services (case B2)

FT and PT shall support the requirements for the alphanumeric service via the MAC C/L downlink service as defined in subclause G.2.2.

The FT shall support the C_F channel.

NOTE: Even though this channel is not used by basic connections the PT decides on the C_F capability indication in the fixed part capabilities message (see subclause F.4.2.2) if the CL_F channel is available (see C/L uplink procedure in ETS 300 175-3 [3]).

The PT shall be able to transmit and the FT shall understand the additional B-field identification codes defined in subclause G.2.2.

The PT shall be able to transmit and the FT shall understand the subset of the broadcast and connectionless service M_T tail messages given in table G.5 below.

Table G.5

a b c d	Meaning
0 0 0 0	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, half slot
0 0 0 1	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, full slot
0 0 1 0	CL _F , first of 2 transmissions, double slot
0 0 1 1	reserved
0 1 0 0	CL _F , last transmission, half slot
0 1 0 1	CL _F , last transmission, full slot
0 1 1 0	CL _F , last transmission, double slot
0 1 1 1	reserved
1 0 0 0	C/L single transmission, no CL _F or CL _S service
1 0 0 1	CL _S service, first transmission
1 0 1 0	reserved
1 0 1 1	reserved

The PT shall be able to transmit and the FT shall understand the MAC B-field "null" message.

The FT and PT shall support the uplink connectionless procedure as defined in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.3 Encryption (features 33 and 34)

To provide encryption, in addition to the requirements stated in Clause F also the following ones shall be fulfilled.

G.3.1 Connection oriented service procedures

The FT and PT shall support the MAC layer encryption procedure as specified in ETS 300 175-7 [7].

G.3.2 System information and multiframe marker (Q_T tail)

The FT shall be able to send and the PT shall understand also the Q_T message (in addition to those identified in subclause F.4.2.2) given in table G.6 below.

Table G.6

Q_H	System Information	Man	Freq
0110	multi-frame number	Yes	8
Man: Mandatory transmission (Yes/No); Freq: Maximum repeat interval in multiframe, if implemented.			

G.3.3 MAC control (M_T tails)

PT and FT shall understand and be able to send all of the encryption control messages as specified in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.4 Selection of bearer service (feature 53)

For connection oriented services only one bearer service is currently fully supported, MAC service type 1f without C_F capability. The selection of bearer services requiring other MAC services are subject to further standardisation.

G.5 TARI request

To provide the means for TARI requests, the following requirements shall be fulfilled in addition to those stated in Clause F.

G.5.1 Non-continuous broadcast procedure

The FT and the PT shall support the A-field procedures for the non-continuous broadcast service as specified in ETS 300 175-3 [3].

G.5.2 MAC control (M_T tails)

PT and FT shall be able to transmit and shall understand the A-field tail messages given in figures G.1 and G.2 below.

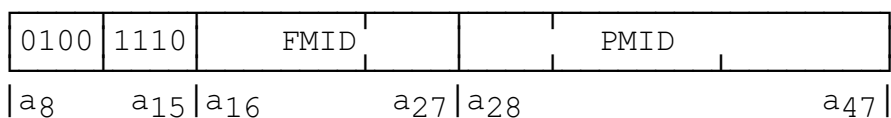


Figure G.1

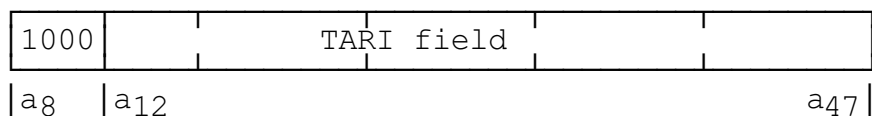


Figure G.2

The first message, given in figure G.1, belongs to the message set for broadcast and connectionless services and identifies the service.

The second message, given in figure G.2, is used to carry the identity information. For the coding of the TARI field refer to ETS 300 175-6 [6].

Annex H (informative): Seamless handover operation

H.1 I-Channel data flow for I_N _miminum_delay service

When two bearers are maintained during bearer handover in a I_N _minimum delay_service the data transmitted in one frame is not the same for the two bearers using physical channels in different time slots. For transmission, the voice service description in the DLC (see ETS 300 175-4 [4]) (LU1) implies that the response on a MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive is a MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitive containing the **latest** octets. Therefore the data depends on the time instant when the MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitive was sent. To achieve minimum delay the occurrence of this primitive should depend on the slot number used by a particular physical channel. This implies that during a bearer handover two MAC-CO_DTR.Ind primitives are sent in one frame and two MAC-CO_DATA.Req primitives are received by the MBC containing different data for the old and the new bearer. For a handover in which no I_N bits are to be lost or added due to the handover, synchronisation between MAC and DLC is necessary. It is recommended to synchronise the MAC and DLC such that the relative offset in data octets for delivering I_N _segments to bearers in different slot positions is given in tables H.1 and H.2 below.

Table H.1: Double slot operation

slots	octet	slots	octet	slots	octet
(0,12)	x + 0	(4,16)	x + 16	(8,20)	x + 32
(2,14)	x + 8	(6,18)	x + 24	(10,22)	x + 40

NOTE 1: The slot numbers correspond to the slots where transmission on a double slot bearer starts.

Table H.2: Full slot operation

slots	octet	slots	octet	slots	octet
(0,12)	x + 0	(4,16)	x + 6	(8,20)	x + 13
(1,13)	x + 1	(5,17)	x + 8	(9,21)	x + 15
(2,14)	x + 3	(6,18)	x + 10	(10,22)	x + 16
(3,15)	x + 5	(7,19)	x + 11	(11,23)	x + 18

NOTE 2: For half slot operation: no recommendation.

History

Document history	
October 1992	First Edition
March 1996	Converted into Adobe Acrobat Portable Document Format (PDF)